

教材架構與特色

01 學習目標

列出每個單元的文法重點，幫助學生掌握該單元的學習內容。

學習目標

- 1 學會名詞、不定冠詞 (a 及 an) 與定冠詞 (the) 的用法
- 2 學會人稱代名詞與所有格的用法
- 3 能運用 Be 動詞現在式描述現在的狀態或提出疑問
- 4 了解指示詞 (this、that、these、those) 的用法

閱讀特快車 She is My Mother

Lisa and Wendy are good friends in class. Lisa is at Wendy's home.

Lisa: Hi, Wendy.

Wendy: Hi, Lisa. Come in.

Lisa: Thank you. Your house is so big.

Wow! It is full of pictures.

Are they your family in the pictures?

Wendy: Yes, they are. This is my favorite picture.



02 閱讀特快車

將單元中學習到的文法句型融入閱讀文章中，讓學生初步了解文法句型的應用，同時透過閱讀練習增強英文語感。

03 文法報報

此部分將逐一說明單元的文法重點，並運用例句幫助學生歸納和理解相關概念。同時，提供隨堂練習，讓學生檢視自己對各個文法概念的理解程度。

文法報報

Topic 1 名詞與冠詞

人、事、物的名稱就是「名詞」，名詞又分為可數名詞和不可數名詞。有時會搭配冠詞 a、an 或 the 使用。以下我們來看看名詞和冠詞的用法。

一、名詞

名詞可分為可數名詞和不可數名詞，以下分別來介紹他們的用法。

1. 可數名詞

(1) 可數名詞是可以數算的名詞，既然可以數算，所以又可以分單數和

綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

1. Tom and Tina _____ good kids.
(A) is (B) are (C) be (D) ×
2. It is _____.
(A) waters (B) wateres (C) water (D) a
3. A: _____ she a happy child? B: Yes, she is.
(A) Am (B) Is (C) Are (D) is
4. _____ their daughter a singer?

04 綜合練習

針對單元的文法重點設計四個練習回合，題型多元且難度由淺入深。第一回合為基礎題型，第二、三、四回提供中翻英和英翻中練習，同時根據會考趨勢增加閱讀測驗的篇數，難度逐步提升。透過這四個回合的練習題，期望學生能夠學會單元的文法重點。



CONTENTS 目錄

II-1

助動詞與have to / had better及不定代名詞one / ones 1

① 助動詞

- can 的用法
- must 的用法
- may 的用法
- might 的用法
- could 的用法
- would 的用法
- should 的用法

② have to 和had better

- have to的用法
- had better的用法

③ 不定代名詞one / ones

- 不定代名詞one, ones 的用法

II-2

形容詞的比較句型及原因從屬連接詞 because 33

① 形容詞的比較句型

- 形容詞的三級變化
- 形容詞原級的比較句型
- 形容詞比較級的比較句型
- 形容詞最高級的比較句型

② 原因從屬連接詞because

- because 的用法及句型



II-3

副詞及時間從屬連接詞 when、before、after

57

- ① 副詞
 - 副詞的形成方式
 - 副詞的功用
 - 副詞的種類、用途與位置
- ② 時間從屬連接詞 when、before、after
 - when 的用法及句型
 - before 的用法及句型
 - after 的用法及句型

II-4

動名詞與不定詞及虛主詞 It

93

- ① 動名詞與不定詞
 - 動名詞的形成與用途
 - 接用動名詞的片語及句型
 - 不定詞的形成與用途
 - 接用不定詞的句型
 - Ⓐ too...to...
 - Ⓑ It takes...to...
 - Ⓒ 邀請/要求/告訴某人做某事
 - Ⓓ 動詞 + enough + 名詞 + 不定詞
 - Ⓔ 動詞 + 形容詞 / 副詞 + enough + 不定詞
- ② 虛主詞 It
 - 虛主詞 it 與動名詞及不定詞的互換
 - 習慣使用虛主詞的句型

II-5

使役與授予動詞及易混淆動詞

123

- ① 使役動詞與授予動詞
 - 使役動詞的用法
 - 授予動詞 give 和 buy 的用法
- ② spend / cost / take 的用法及比較
 - spend
 - cost
 - take

II-6

連綴與感官動詞及so...that...的用法

151

- ① 連綴動詞與感官動詞
 - 連綴動詞的用法
 - 感官動詞的用法
- ② so...that...的用法
 - so...that... 的用法及句型

II-7

現在完成式及所有格代名詞與反身代名詞

177

- ① 現在完成式
 - 現在完成式的使用時機
 - 現在完成式的句型
- ② 所有格代名詞與反身代名詞
 - 所有格代名詞
 - 反身代名詞

II-8

附加問句及感嘆句

209

- ① 附加問句
 - 附加問句的組成原則&與前面完整句子的搭配
 - Be動詞的附加問句與答句
 - 一般動詞的附加問句與答句
 - 存在詞的附加問句與答句
- ② 感嘆句
 - 以what為首的感嘆句
 - 以how為首的感嘆句
 - 含有such的感嘆句
 - 含有so的感嘆句

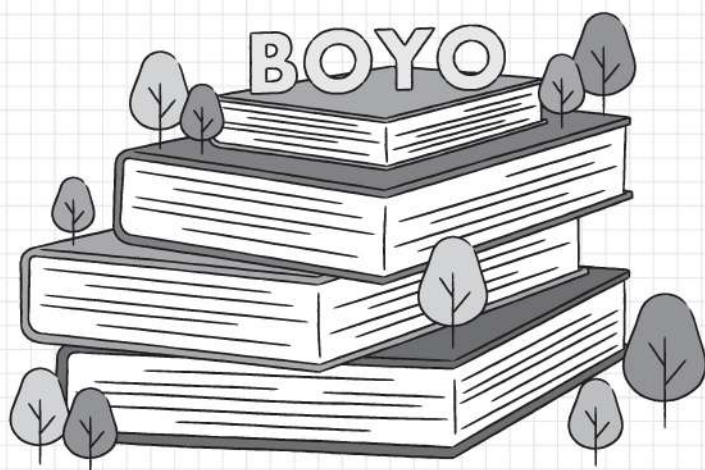
II 級總複習

236

附錄-單字索引

249

NOTES



II-1

助動詞與 have to / had better 及不定代名詞 one / ones

學習目標

- 1 學會助動詞 can / must / may / might / could / would / should 的用法
- 2 學會 have to 和 had better 的用法
- 3 知道不定代名詞 one / ones 的用法



閱讀特快車

The Lion and the Mouse

① Once upon a time, a little hungry mouse looked for some food in the forest (森林). He looked here and there but found nothing to eat. He was so sad. Suddenly (突然間), he saw an apple tree in front of him. He didn't know one thing: a lion was sleeping under the tree. The mouse got the apple and was ready to eat it. The lion^② woke up and caught the mouse. Lion: I am going to eat you!

Mouse: Please^③ let me go. I will return (報答) to you one day.

Lion: Ha! Ha! It is so funny. You can go.



After few days, the lion took a walk in the forest. He wasn't that lucky, so he^④ fell into a hole (洞). He^⑤ asked for help! The mouse heard the sound and went to the lion. He asked his monkey friends to save the lion.

Lion: Thank you all.

Mouse: You were nice to me before. I must help you.

Lion: You are right! Even a little mouse could help!

文章說明

- ① once upon a time: 很久以前
- ② wake up (過去式 woke up): 醒來 (片語)
- ③ let ... go: (釋)放……走 (片語)
- ④ fall into (過去式 fell into): 掉入 (片語)
- ⑤ ask for help: 請求幫忙 (片語)



文法報報

Topic 1 助動詞

相信大家還記得 do 和 does 這二個助動詞，在英文的世界裡，其實還有其他助動詞，而且它們和 do / does 一樣，後面也要接用**原形動詞**喔。現在就讓我們一起來看看英文中還有哪些常見的助動詞吧！

一、can 的用法

can 的中文意思是「能、可以」，表示「允許」，除此之外，還有「會」的意思，表示「能力」。它有肯定、否定和疑問的用法，一起來看看以下說明。

1. can 的肯定用法

- 例 1：You **can** wear my jeans. (你能穿我的牛仔褲。)
- 例 2：Everyone **can** ask me three questions. (每個人可以問我三個問題。)
- 例 3：He **can** ride a motorcycle. (他會騎摩托車。)
- 例 4：This kid **can** speak French. (這個小孩會說法文。)

★ 註：can 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

2. can 的否定用法

- 例 1：Ben **cannot** understand your question. (Ben 不能了解你的問題。)
- 例 2：You **can't** wear my sweater. (你不可以穿我的毛衣。)
- 例 3：That American **cannot** speak Chinese. (那個美國人不會說中文。)
- 例 4：My mom **can't** ride a bike. (我媽媽不會騎腳踏車。)

★ 註 1：在 can 後面加 not 就變成否定，cannot 可縮寫成 can't。

★ 註 2：cannot / can't 的中文意思是「不能、不可以」，表示「不允許」，除此之外，還有「不會」的意思，表示「沒有能力」，後面要接原形動詞。

3. can 的疑問用法

- 例 1：Can Helen mop the floor with you? (Helen 能跟你一起拖地嗎?)
No, she can't mop the floor with me. (不，她不能跟我一起拖地。)

例 2 : **Can I invite Jane to your party?** (我可以邀請 Jane 去你的派對嗎?)

Yes, you can invite Jane to my party.

(是的, 你可以邀請 Jane 來我的派對。)

例 3 : **Can you make a cake?** (你會做蛋糕嗎?)

Yes, I can. (是的, 我會。)

例 4 : **Can Paul play the drum?** (Paul 會打鼓嗎?)

No, he can not / can't / cannot. (不, 他不會。)

★ 註 1 : 把 can 放在句子開頭就變成疑問, 後面也是接原形動詞。

★ 註 2 : 答句以 Yes 或 No 開頭, 也有詳答跟簡答的區別。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. He can _____ the guitar.
(A) play (B) plays (C) played (D) playing
- () 2. You _____ the garbage on the table.
(A) can putting (B) can not puted
(C) can't put (D) can't put

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我叔叔會游泳。

2. 她可以玩電腦遊戲嗎?



二、must 的用法

must 的中文意思是「必須、一定」，它有肯定和否定的用法，且看以下說明。

1. must 的肯定用法

例 1：He **must stop** smoking soon. (他必須盡快停止抽菸。)

例 2：They **must go** to that city now. (他們現在必須去那個城市。)

例 3：You **must be** crazy. (你一定是瘋了。)

例 4：It **must be** your cap. (這一定是你的帽子了。)

★ 註 1：must 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

★ 註 2：must 當「必須」解釋時，表示「務必、一定要」；當「一定」解釋時，表示「合理、符合邏輯的推測」。

2. must 的否定用法

例 1：You **must not change** your mind. (你不准改變你的主意。)

例 2：You **mustn't talk** in class. (你絕不可以在上課中講話。)

★ 註 1：在 must 後面加 not 就變成否定，must not 可縮寫成 mustn't。

★ 註 2：must not / mustn't 表示「不准、絕對不可以、禁止」。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. He must _____ for his English test.
(A) prepares (B) prepare (C) preparing (D) prepared

() 2. You _____ much coffee.
(A) mustnot drink (B) must not drinking
(C) mustn't drank (D) must not drink

❖ 翻譯題

1. 妳現在必須做妳的作業。

2. 你不准玩電腦遊戲。

三、may 的用法

may 用來「表示許可或是請求許可」。除此之外，它還可以表示「可能性」。現在一起來看看它的肯定、否定和疑問用法吧！

1. may 的肯定用法

- 例 1 : He **may go** home now. (他可以回家了。)
- 例 2 : You **may invite** Tom to the party. (你可以邀請 Tom 來派對。)
- 例 3 : These girls **may be** nurses. (這些女孩可能是護士。)
- 例 4 : I **may be** 30 minutes late. (我可能會晚到 30 分鐘。)

★ 註：may 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

2. may 的否定用法

- 例 1 : It's late. She **may not go** out now. (時間晚了，她不可以外出了。)
- 例 2 : You **may not fight** with your brother. (你不可以跟你弟弟打架。)
- 例 3 : He **may not agree** with you. (他可能不會同意你。)
- 例 4 : They **may not be** able to help you. (他們可能無法幫你。)

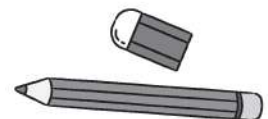
★ 註：在 may 後面加 not 就變成否定。


3. may 的疑問用法

- 例 1 : **May I visit** your parents? (我可以拜訪你的父母嗎?)
Yes, you may visit my parents. (是的，你可以拜訪我父母。)
- 例 2 : **May they come** in? (他們可以進來嗎?)
No, they may not come in. (不，他們不可以進來。)
- 例 3 : **May the kid be** hungry? (這個小孩可能餓了嗎?)
Yes, he may. (是的，可能。)
- 例 4 : **May John help** you? (John 可能幫你嗎?)
No, he may not. (不，他不可能。)

★ 註 1：把 may 放在句子開頭就變成疑問，後面也是接原形動詞。

★ 註 2：答句以 Yes 或 No 開頭，也有詳答跟簡答的區別。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. A : May I take a seat (坐下) here? B : Yes, _____ .
(A) you'may (B) you'may not
(C) you may (D) you may not
- () 2. Tim _____ that actor.
(A) may knows (B) may not know
(C) may knowing (D) may not knows

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我媽媽可能無法拖地。

2. 你可能來我的派對嗎？



四、might 的用法

might 和 may 的意思相近，但比 may 的可能性還低，而且口氣也比較客氣委婉。以下來看看它的用法。

1. might 的肯定用法

例 1：It **might be** cold today. (今天可能會冷。)

例 2：Tom **might stop** smoking. (Tom 也許會停止抽菸。)

★ 註：might 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

2. might 的否定用法

例 1：You **might not understand** my question. (你也許不了解我的問題。)

例 2：They **might not buy** these purple pens. (他們可能不買這些紫色的筆。)

★ 註：在 might 後面加 not 就變成否定。

3. might 的疑問用法

例 1：**Might I ask** a question? (我能問個問題嗎?)

例 2：**Might John give** you true answers? (John 可能給你真實的答案嗎?)

★ 註 1：把 might 放在句子開頭就變成疑問，後面也是接原形動詞。

★ 註 2：答句以 Yes 或 No 開頭，也有詳答跟簡答的區別。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. A : Might Ken know that actress? B : Yes, _____ .
 (A) he might (B) he might not
 (C) he might be (D) he might be not
- () 2. Tim _____ an engineer.
 (A) might is (B) might not is
 (C) might not (D) might be

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我爸爸今天也許會穿牛仔褲。(請用 might 作答)

2. Jane 可能去百貨公司嗎?(請用 might 作答)

五、could 的用法

could 是 can 的過去式，表示「以前擁有的能力，但現在沒有」。它也用來表達「禮貌地請求許可」，中文意思是「可以……嗎？」。

1. could 的肯定用法

例 1 : I **could** run fast before, but now I can't. (我以前能跑很快，但現在不行。)

例 2 : He **could** stay up late before, but he can't now.
 (他以前可以熬夜，但現在無法。)

★ 註 1 : could 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

★ 註 2 : could 在肯定句中是表示以前擁有某種能力，中文意思是「能、可以」。

2. could 的否定用法

例 1 : My brother **could not** speak English last year, but now he can.
 (我弟弟去年不會講英文，但現在會。)

例 2：This little kid **couldn't walk** last month, but he can now.
(這個小孩上個月不會走路，但現在會。)

★ 註 1：在 **could** 後面加 **not** 就變成否定，**could not** 可縮寫成 **couldn't**。

★ 註 2：**could not / couldn't** 表示以前沒有某種能力，中文意思是「不會」。

3. could 的疑問用法

例 1：Could I **ask** you a question? (我可以問你一個問題嗎?)
Yes, you **can** ask me a question. (是的，你可以問我問題。)

例 2：Could you **give** me your notebook? (你可以給我你的筆記本嗎?)
No, I **can't**. (不，我無法。)

★ 註 1：把 **could** 放在句子開頭就變成疑問，後面也是接原形動詞。

★ 註 2：**could** 在疑問句中是表示請求允許，中文意思是「可以……嗎？」，它和 **can** 的不同在於 **could** 比較委婉、有禮貌。

★ 註 3：答句以 **Yes** 或 **No** 開頭，也有詳答跟簡答的區別。此外，因為 **can** 才有准許的意思，**could** 並無此意，所以答句裡要用 **can** 或 **can't** 來表達允許或不允許對方的請求。



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. We _____ before, but now we can.
(A) could dance (B) couldn't dance
(C) can dance (D) could not danced

- () 2. A: Could I talk to you now? B: _____
(A) Yes, you could. (B) Yes, you couldn't.
(C) No, you can't. (D) No, you can.

❖ 翻譯題

1. A: 我可以買這一件灰色毛衣嗎? (請用 **could** 造問句)
B: 是的，你可以。

六、would 的用法

would 是 will 的過去式，用來表達在過去的時間裡會去做某事。它也可以在後面加上 like 以表示「想要……」。而在疑問句中是表達婉轉的請求，以下來一一說明。

1. would 的肯定用法

例 1：Tom said he **would come** to my party. (Tom 說他會來我的派對。)

例 2：Cathy told me she'd **be** here before 7 p.m.

(Cathy 跟我說她 7:00 之前會在這裡。)

例 3：I **would like** some hot tea. (我想要一些熱茶。)

= I **want** some hot tea.

例 4：He'd **like** to go to another shop. (他想要去另一家店。)

= He **wants** to go to another shop.

★ 註 1：would 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

★ 註 2：would 表達在過去的時間裡會做某件事，中文意思是「會」。

★ 註 3：would 可以跟人稱代名詞縮寫，例如：she would = she'd；
he would = he'd；I would = I'd；they would = they'd。

★ 註 4：would like 表示「想要……」，等於 want，通常使用在現在情境。

2. would 的否定用法

例 1：Cathy said she **would not buy** that cap. (Cathy 說她不會買那一頂帽子。)

例 2：My brothers said they'd **not agree** on your plan.

(我哥哥們說他們不會同意你的計畫。)

例 3：Ken told me he **wouldn't arrive** here before 10 a.m.

(Ken 跟我說他 10:00 之前不會抵達這裡。)

例 4：I **would not like** to talk to that clerk. (我不想跟那個店員說話。)

= I **do not want** to talk to that clerk.

例 5：He **wouldn't like** to take that job. (他不想接受那一份工作。)

= He **doesn't want** to take that job.

★ 註 1：在 would 後面加 not 就變成否定，would not 可縮寫成 wouldn't。

★ 註 2：在 would 與 like 中間加 not 就變成否定，would not 可縮寫成 wouldn't。

3. would 的疑問用法

例 1 : **Would** you please open the door for me? (能否請你幫我開門?)
Yes, I would be happy to. (好的, 我很樂意。)

例 2 : **Would** you give me the medicine? (可以把藥給我嗎?)
No, I **can't**. (不, 我無法。)

例 3 : **Would** you like some hot tea? (你想要一些熱茶嗎?)
Yes, I would like some hot tea. (好, 我想要一些熱茶。)

例 4 : **Would** they like to go to the movie theater with us?
(他們想跟我們去電影院嗎?)
No, they wouldn't. (不, 他們不想。)

★ 註 1 : 將 **would** 放在句首, 就變成疑問句, 表示委婉、客氣的請求。回答是肯定的話, 可以用「Yes, I would be happy to.」或「Yes, I'd be glad to.」。回答是否定的話, 則用「No, I can't.」。

★ 註 2 : **would like** 的疑問句則用來詢問他人是否想要某物或是否有意願去做某件事。



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Tim said he would _____ his friends.
(A) visited (B) visit (C) visits (D) to visit
- () 2. Would Ken like _____ a picnic with us?
(A) have (B) has (C) having (D) to have

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我想要一碗飯。(用 **would like** 作答)

2. 你想要加入我們嗎?(用 **Would ... like ...** 作答)

七、should 的用法

should 的中文意思是「應該」，它有肯定、否定和疑問的用法，我們一起來看看吧。

1. should 的肯定用法

- 例 1 : You **should** often exercise. (你們應該常常運動。)
- 例 2 : Everyone **should** drink enough water every day.
(每個人應該每天喝足量的水。)
- 例 3 : He **should** study hard. (他應該努力讀書。)
- 例 4 : We **should** finish our homework before 8 p.m.
(我們應該在晚上 8:00 之前完成功課。)

★ 註：should 是助動詞，後面要接原形動詞。

2. should 的否定用法

- 例 1 : Your brother **should not** buy that expensive jeans.
(妳弟弟不該買那件貴的牛仔褲。)
- 例 2 : They **shouldn't** talk in class. (他們上課中不應該講話。)

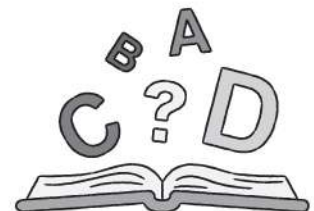
★ 註：在 should 後面加 not 就變成否定，should not 可縮寫成 shouldn't。

3. should 的疑問用法

- 例 1 : **Should** I go with you? (我應該跟你們一起去嗎?)
Yes, you **should** go with us. (是的，你應該跟我們一起去。)
- 例 2 : **Should** we help her? (我們應該幫忙她嗎?)
No, we **shouldn't**. (不，我們不該。)

★ 註 1：把 should 放在句子開頭就變成疑問，後面也是接原形動詞。

★ 註 2：答句以 Yes 或 No 開頭，也有詳答跟簡答的區別。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. He shouldn't _____ Tom to the party.
(A) to invite (B) invites (C) inviting (D) invite
- () 2. Should Ken and Candy _____ in the room?
(A) staying (B) stayed (C) be stay (D) stay

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我們應該每天打掃我們的房間。

2. 妳弟弟不應該在圖書館裡唱歌。

Topic 2 have to 和 had better

通常，介紹助動詞時也會提到二個片語「have to」和「had better」，它們也有助動詞的功能，現在就讓我們一起來看看它們的用法吧！

一、have to 的用法

have to 的中文意思是「必須」，我們一起往下看。

1. have to 的肯定用法

例 1：You **have to** finish your homework before you watch TV.
(你看電視前必須寫完作業。)

例 2：Mark **has to** study tonight because he has a math test tomorrow.
(Mark 今晚必須讀書，因為他明天有個數學測驗。)

例 3：They **had to** practice baseball **last Friday**. (他們上星期五必須練習棒球。)

★ 註 1：主詞是第三人稱單數時，have to 要變成 has to；have to 和 has to 用於過去式時，不論主詞是第幾人稱，均變化為 had to。

★ 註 2：have to / has to / had to 後面要接原形動詞。

2. have to 的否定用法

例 1 : I **don't have to** go to school on weekends. (週末我不須去學校。)

例 2 : Mark **doesn't have to** go to work every Saturday.
(Mark 每星期六不須工作。)

例 3 : They **didn't have to** practice baseball yesterday.
(他們昨天不須練習棒球。)

★ 註 1 : 在 have to 前面加上 **don't / doesn't / didn't** 就變成否定。

★ 註 2 : don't / doesn't / didn't 後面一律用 have to，不用 has to 和 had to。

3. have to 的疑問用法

例 1 : **Do you have to** go to Japan next week? (你下星期必須去日本嗎?)

例 2 : **Does he have to** arrive in America next week?
(他下星期必須抵達美國嗎?)

例 3 : **Did she have to** call her mom yesterday? (她昨天必須打電話給她媽媽嗎?)

★ 註 1 : 在 have to 前面加上 Do / Does / Did 就變成疑問。

★ 註 2 : Do / Does / Did 後面一律用 have to。



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. His mother and father _____ go to Taipei last week.
(A) had to (B) have to
(C) has to (D) don't have to

() 2. They _____ mop the floor yesterday.
(A) hadn't to (B) don't have to
(C) didn't had to (D) didn't have to

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我們上個月不須上學。(用 have to 作答)

2. Paul 每天必須踢足球嗎?(用 have to 作答)

二、had better 的用法

had better 的中文意思是「最好」，用來表達建議，但有時也帶有威脅的成分。

1. had better 的肯定用法

例 1：The floor is wet. You **had better mop** it now.

(地板溼了，你現在最好拖地。)

例 2：It's late. **We'd better go** to bed now. (晚了，我們現在最好去睡覺。)

★ 註 1：had better 後面要接原形動詞，而且不論是第幾人稱，都是用 **had better**，不會是 have better / has better。

★ 註 2：had better 常跟前面的人稱代名詞縮寫，例如：I'd better, you'd better, she'd better, they'd better。

2. had better 的否定用法

例 1：We **had better not camp** here. (我們最好不要在這裡露營。)

例 2：You'd **better not make** a noise now. (你們現在最好不要發出噪音。)

★ 註：在 had better 後面加 not 就變成否定。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. She _____ drink Coke.

(A) has better

(B) had better not

(C) hadn't better

(D) had better to

() 2. They _____ for their English test now.

(A) have better prepare

(B) had preparing

(C) had better prepare

(D) had better to prepare

❖ 翻譯題

1. 學生最好不要每天打電腦遊戲。

2. 你弟弟最好每天做作業。

文法得來速

❖ must vs. have to

助動詞	語氣	例 句
must	強烈	I must go home now because it is late.
have to	較和緩	I have to go home now because it is late.

備註：以上兩個例句意思相同，但 **must** 比 **have to** 的語氣更強烈。

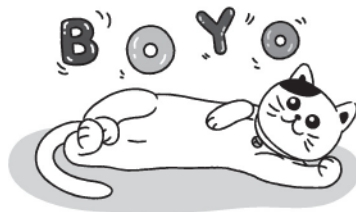
❖ can vs. could

(一) 表示能力

助動詞	意涵	例 句
can	目前有的能力	I can run very fast.
could	以前有的能力	I could run very fast, but I can't now.

(二) 表示請求和允許

助動詞	語氣	例 句
can		Can I ask you a question?
could	較 can 有禮貌	Could I ask you a question?



❖ may vs. might

(一) 表示可能性

助動詞	語氣	例 句
may	可能性高	It may rain today.
might	可能性低	It might rain today.

備註：以上兩個例句意思相同，但 **might** 比 **may** 的可能性更低。

(二) 表示允許或請求許可

助動詞	語氣	例 句
may	禮貌用法	May I use your pencil?
might	比 may 更委婉	Might I use your pencil?

❖ would vs. could vs. should

助動詞	意涵	例 句
would	過去將會…	Tom said he would come to my party.
	想要	I would like to have a cup of tea.
	委婉請求 (問句)	Would you please give me the book?
could	禮貌性請求	Could you help me?
	可能性	We could see a movie today.
should	具要求意味	We should do dishes after dinner.

Topic 3 不定代名詞 one / ones

為了避免重複，在英文裡常會用單數的 **one** 跟複數的 **ones** 來代替前面已提過的不特定的人、事、物，現在就讓我們一起來看看它們的用法吧。

一、不定代名詞 one 與 ones

one 用來代替單數可數名詞，**ones** 用來代替複數可數名詞。

1. 不定代名詞 one 的用法

例 1 : Her sweater is old, so she would like to buy a new **one**.
(她的毛衣舊了，所以她想買一件新的。)

★ 註：此處的 **new one** = **new sweater**。

例 2 : This skirt is too small. Please give me a larger **one**.
(這件裙子太小。請給我一件大一點的。)

★ 註：此處的 **larger one** = **larger skirt**。

例 3 : That book is boring. Please give me an interesting **one**.
(那本書無趣。請給我一本有趣的。)

★ 註：此處的 **interesting one** = **interesting book**。

2. 不定代名詞 ones 的用法

例 1 : I ate red apples yesterday. I didn't eat green **ones**.
(我昨天吃了紅蘋果。我沒吃青蘋果。)

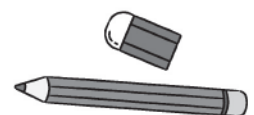
★ 註：此處的 **green ones** = **green apples**。


例 2 : They don't have new books. They only have old **ones**.
(他們沒有新書。他們只有舊的。)

★ 註：此處的 **old ones** = **old books**。

例 3 : Sue didn't buy purple blankets. She bought gray **ones**.
(Sue 沒買紫色的毯子。她買了灰色的。)

★ 註：此處的 **gray ones** = **gray blankets**。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. This computer game is so boring. I want an interesting _____ .
(A) some (B) the one (C) one (D) ones

() 2. These jackets are too big. Please (請) show me some smaller (小一點的) _____ .
(A) ones (B) one (C) many (D) the ones

❖ 翻譯題

1. Which doll do you like, this one or that one?

2. Paul 的機車太小，所以他想買一輛大的。





綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. Can she _____ a motorcycle?
 (A) rides (B) riding (C) ride (D) rode
- () 2. Ken and Tom must _____ homework every day.
 (A) did (B) do (C) to do (D) doing
- () 3. You have to _____ a nap.
 (A) take (B) takes (C) took (D) taking
- () 4. She may _____ a reporter.
 (A) is (B) be (C) was (D) being
- () 5. John might _____ his ring.
 (A) sells (B) selling (C) be sell (D) sell
- () 6. Ken doesn't like this pink bicycle. Please show him a white _____ .
 (A) ones (B) one (C) the one (D) a one
- () 7. Would you _____ some vegetable soup?
 (A) liking (B) to like (C) like (D) liked
- () 8. You shouldn't _____ every day.
 (A) watch TV (B) to watch TV
 (C) watching TV (D) watches TV
- () 9. Our baby is sleeping. You had better _____ .
 (A) keeps quiet (B) keeping quiet
 (C) to keep quiet (D) keep quiet
- () 10. Would you _____ the window?
 (A) closed (B) closing (C) to close (D) close
- () 11. It might _____ today.
 (A) is sunny (B) be sunny (C) sunny (D) being sunny

- () 12. He _____ six meals every day.
(A) have to eat (B) has be eating
(C) has to eating (D) has to eat
- () 13. Could he _____ dinner for us?
(A) preparing (B) prepare (C) prepared (D) prepares
- () 14. Your brother _____ better go to bed early.
(A) have (B) had (C) has (D) having
- () 15. My sister _____ like this book.
(A) doesn't may (B) isn't may (C) may not (D) may not
- () 16. Judy _____ work today.
(A) doesn't have to (B) hasn't to
(C) have to (D) doesn't has to
- () 17. Joe mustn't _____ now.
(A) swimming (B) to swim (C) swim (D) swims
- () 18. A : Could I talk to you now?
B : No, you _____ .
(A) can't (B) can (C) could (D) can talk
- () 19. I don't have red pens. I only have the blue _____ .
(A) ones (B) the one (C) some (D) many
- () 20. We _____ talk to him now.
(A) have better (B) had better not
(C) don't have (D) not had better

二、句子重組

1. can't / soccer. / He / play

2. I / your jeans? / wear / Could

3. be tired / must / Your husband / now.

4. be / may / in / Mary / her friend's house.

5. this weekend? / Do you / go to work / have to

三、翻譯題

1. Tom might be in this department store now.

2. You shouldn't invite Ben to your birthday party.

3. You had better not drink much Coke.

4. Does Mark have to call his parents every night?

5. Could I buy a shirt in the department store?





綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. _____ your daughter play the piano?
(A) Have to (B) Can (C) Has to (D) Cannot
- () 2. _____ I help you?
(A) May (B) Am (C) Have to (D) Cannot
- () 3. You _____ be Mr. Lin's son. You have the same eyes.
(A) can (B) would (C) must (D) had better
- () 4. Students _____ spend time reading.
(A) has to (B) does (C) have better (D) should
- () 5. It's 11:45 p.m. now! You _____ go home now. Your parents must worry about you.
(A) would (B) might (C) may (D) had better
- () 6. It's 16:50 now. I _____ go now before the traffic (交通) gets too bad.
(A) has better (B) have better
(C) had better (D) had better not
- () 7. What _____ you like to drink?
(A) must (B) would (C) can (D) may
- () 8. Today is Sunday. We _____ have to go to school.
(A) not (B) aren't (C) weren't (D) don't
- () 9. Which _____ do you like?
(A) one (B) the one (C) ones (D) the one
- () 10. _____ you pick me up (接……) at 5:00?
(A) Must (B) Could (C) Should (D) Mustn't

- () 11. Larry cannot _____ my sweater. Mine (我的毛衣) is too small for him.
 (A) wear (B) wears (C) wearing (D) wore
- () 12. It wouldn't _____ easy to solve (解出) this math question, but I would try (嘗試) it. Who knows? I might be a genius (天才).
 (A) is (B) am (C) are (D) be
- () 13. _____ I go to bed now? I have to get up early tomorrow.
 (A) Do (B) Had better
 (C) Have (D) Could
- () 14. We had better not interfere (介入; 干擾). She _____ not like it.
 (A) have better (B) may (C) not must (D) had to
- () 15. _____ you give me a ride (載……一程)?
 (A) Must (B) Had better
 (C) Can (D) Have to
- () 16. You can rely on (依靠) Eric in an emergency (緊急情況). He's the reliable (可靠的) _____ in every way.
 (A) one (B) the one (C) ones (D) the ones
- () 17. We _____ take another (另一個) road because this is the wrong one. Let's turn back (回頭; 掉頭).
 (A) has to (B) has (C) having to (D) had better
- () 18. Shouldn't we _____ the meeting (會議) now?
 (A) started (B) start (C) starting (D) starts
- () 19. There is serious pollution (嚴重汙染) here. I cannot _____ it. <改編自基測 91-2>
 (A) imagine (想像) (B) imagining
 (C) imagines (D) imagined
- () 20. Henry's car is old. He wants to get a new _____ for himself.
 (A) one (B) ones (C) the one (D) the ones

二、填空（請選出最適當的助動詞填入空格中，且答案不可重複選填。）

will	Does	have to	May	Did
can	would	has to	had better	

- _____ I turn on the TV? (提示：禮貌地提問)
- You _____ not play too many computer games.
- What _____ you like to eat?
- We _____ play soccer tomorrow.
- Judy is an English teacher. She _____ speak English well.
- My car broke down (拋錨). I _____ go to school by bus.
- _____ he also study at this school? You have the same uniforms (制服).
- Her grades (成績) are poor. She _____ study hard.
- _____ you go to Taipei last month?

三、翻譯題

- You had better take a rest (休息) now.

- His car breaks down in the middle of nowhere (在荒無人煙之處). He can only wait for help now.

3. Do you have to go to work today?

4. 他的哥哥可能是個工程師。

5. 我不能上床睡覺。我必須完成我的作業。

四、閱讀測驗

Dan : Welcome to USPS (美國郵政署) ! How may I help you?

Linda : I'd like to send this package (包裹) to Taiwan. How much should I pay?

Dan : It depends on (取決於) the package's weight (重量) . Let's see... That would be 10 dollars. How would you like to pay it?

Linda : Can I pay in cash (付現) ?

Dan : Sure. Now, the last question : What's in the package?

Linda : Some photos I took in America.

- () 1. Where can you hear this conversation (對話) ?
- (A) In a post office (郵局) .
- (B) In a park.
- (C) In the classroom.
- (D) In a store.
- () 2. Where would Linda send her package to?
- (A) China. (B) America. (C) Taiwan. (D) Japan.
- () 3. How much should Linda pay for this package?
- (A) 100 dollars. (B) 1000 NT dollars.
- (C) 10 dollars. (D) 10 NT dollars.



綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A : Can I take my dog to your house?

B : No, _____ . (請簡答)

2. A : Does she have to wait for him at the bus stop (公車站) ?

B : Yes, _____ . (請詳答)

3. A : Could you walk to school?

B : Yes, _____ . (請簡答)

4. A : What _____ you like to drink?

B : A cup of coffee, thanks!

5. A : _____ I help you?

B : I am _____ (look for) a black shirt.

二、翻譯題

1. 你們一定是母女。

2. Tom 最好現在做他的作業。

3. 你想看棒球賽嗎？

4. 你應該關心 (care about) 你的小孩們。

5. 你會做自己的午餐嗎？

6. 我可以看一下 (take a look at) 你的照片嗎？

7. 他們可能正在他們的房間看電視。

8. 你可以重複 (repeat) 嗎？

9. 我可以借 (borrow) 你的椅子嗎？

10. 你必須在郵局 (post office) 右轉。



~背面尚有試題，請翻頁繼續作答~

三、短文英翻中與選擇

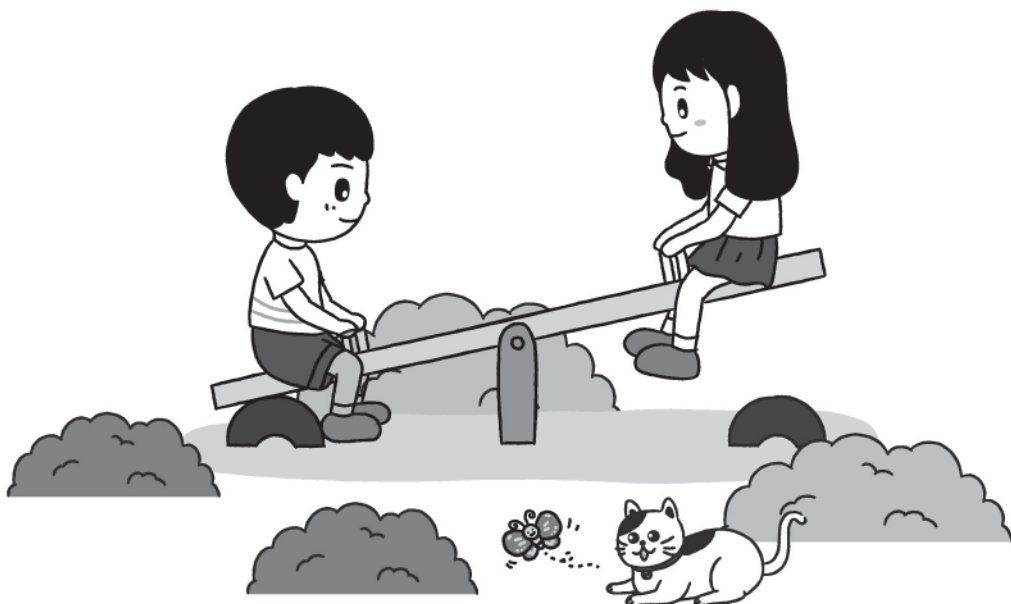
1. 短文英翻中

Daniel needs some books for his Chinese class this semester (學期). He doesn't have much money to buy them, so he had to borrow (借) them from the library. He will go to the library this weekend. He can use his library card to borrow up to 20 books, and he only (只) needs to borrow 10 books according to (根據) the list (清單).

2. 短文選擇

- () (1) What does Daniel need?
- (A) Twenty Chinese books. (B) Ten math books.
(C) One math book. (D) Ten Chinese books.
- () (2) How will Daniel get these Chinese books?
- (A) He will buy them all from the bookstore.
(B) He will borrow them from the bank.
(C) He will borrow them from the library.
(D) He will borrow them from his friends.

- () (3) How many books can Daniel borrow with one library card?
- (A) 10 books. (B) 15 books.
(C) 20 books. (D) We don't know.





綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

我拿到了好成績 (grade)。我好開心。我想向我的老師說謝謝。她一定也很開心。我明天將會告訴她這個好消息。

二、克漏字選擇

Denny needed a new baseball bat (棒球棒) because his old 1 was broken (斷掉了) this Wednesday. But he 2 not have 3 money to buy a new bat from the store. So, he 4 get a bat from a second-hand store (二手商店) .

He was lucky though (然而) . His friends knew he needed one, so they let (讓) him borrow their bats at school. Now, he 5 need to pay anything to practice baseball 6 the baseball team! How wonderful is that?

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| () 1. (A) one | (B) the one | (C) ones | (D) the ones |
| () 2. (A) does | (B) do | (C) did | (D) would |
| () 3. (A) many | (B) much | (C) a few | (D) little |
| () 4. (A) have to | (B) had to | (C) has to | (D) has not to |
| () 5. (A) wouldn't | (B) couldn't | (C) shouldn't | (D) doesn't |

- () 6. (A) on (B) from (C) next to (D) between

三、閱讀測驗

Everyone has to take the running test. Most (多數的) people take it in junior high school. The girls should finish the test under 12 minutes. The boys must finish the test under 10 minutes. Most people can pass (通過) but few cannot. Michelle failed (失敗). She was good at first (一開始). She ran in front of everyone. But she got tired, and she walked. At last (最後), she finished the run in 17 minutes. She should run at a steady pace (穩定的步調). Not too fast, and not too slow.

- () 1. What test must everyone do in junior high school?
 (A) Sleeping. (B) Boxing (拳擊).
 (C) Running. (D) We don't know.
- () 2. Could everyone pass the test?
 (A) Yes. (B) No.
 (C) We don't know. (D) Only Michelle can.
- () 3. What should Michelle do next time?
 (A) Run fast. (B) Run slowly.
 (C) Ride a bike. (D) Run steadily (勻速地).



II-2

形容詞的比較句型及 原因從屬連接詞 because

學習目標

- ① 學會形容詞的比較句型
- ② 知道原因從屬連接詞 because 的用法



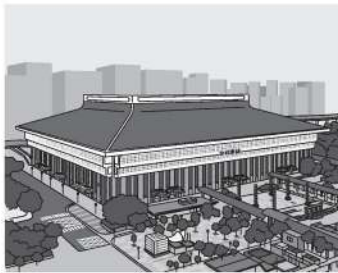
閱讀特快車

A Trip to Taipei

My cousin invites me to Taipei next Saturday, so he makes a plan for me.

Taipei Main Station (台北車站)

10AM
|
12AM



- Meet up each other (彼此) and buy a ①24hr Taipei Metro Pass. It's cheaper to take MRT or bus with the card.
- Have a lunch.



Yangmingshan National Park (陽明山國家公園)

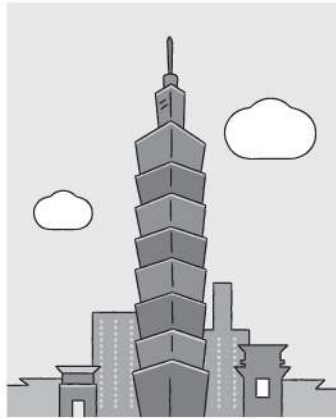
1PM
|
5PM



- It's one of the most famous parks in Taiwan.
- We could see Flower Clock (花鐘) and enjoy hot spring (溫泉) there.

Taipei 101 (台北 101 大樓)

7PM
|
10PM



- It's the highest building (建築) in Taiwan. It was the tallest building from 2004 to 2010 in the world.
- Let's go to the top of the building and take pictures with the night scene (景色).
- Have a dinner.

My Cousin's House

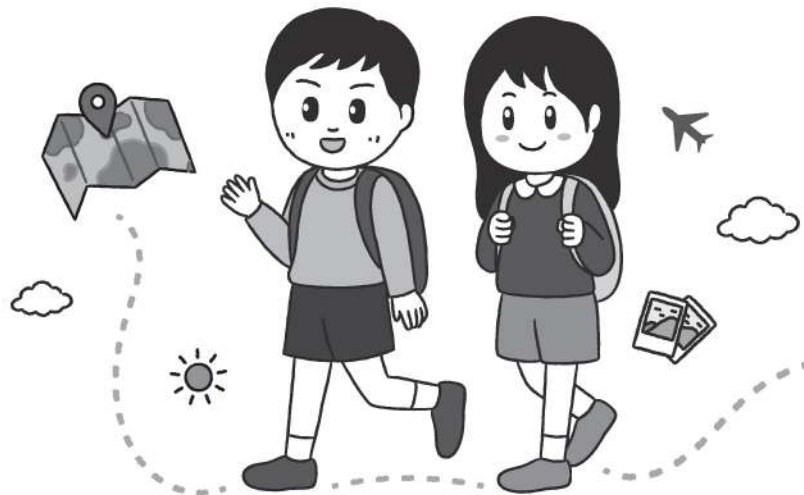
10:30PM
|



- Take a warm bath.
- Have a nice talk before sleep.

文章說明

① 24hr Taipei Metro Pass : 台北捷運公車一日票卷





文法報報

Topic 1 形容詞的比較句型

日常生活裡，我們有時會對人或事物進行比較，比方說 A 和 B 一樣便宜、A 比 B 便宜、A 是最貴的。而這樣的比較要如何用英文表示呢？我們一起來看看下面的說明吧！

一、形容詞的三級變化

形容詞有**原級**、**比較級**與**最高級**，原級是形容詞原本的樣貌，而比較級與最高級是由原級「規則」或「不規則」變化而來，接下來讓我們來看看如何變化。

1. 形容詞三級範例：

原級	比較級	最高級
small	smaller	smallest
happy	happier	happiest
fine	finer	finest
big	bigger	biggest
interesting	more interesting	most interesting
bad	worse	worst




2. 比較級的形成方式：

形成方式	範例
(1) 在後面加上「er」	small ⇒ smaller fast ⇒ faster
(2) 字尾為“子音 + y”時，則「去掉 y，再加 ier」	dirty ⇒ dirtier happy ⇒ happier yummy ⇒ yummiier pretty ⇒ prettier
(3) 字尾已有“e”時，則「只加 r」	fine ⇒ finer nice ⇒ nicer true ⇒ truer cute ⇒ cuter
(4) 單音節形容詞字尾是“子音 + 短母音 + 子音”（即「子母子」排列）時，則要「重複字尾，再加 er」	big ⇒ bigger hot ⇒ hotter thin ⇒ thinner sad ⇒ sadder
(5) <u>三個音節以上</u> （包含三個）的形容詞，在 <u>前面加 more</u> ，即「more + 形容詞」	interesting ⇒ more interesting expensive ⇒ more expensive delicious ⇒ more delicious difficult ⇒ more difficult
(6) 不規則變化，無規律性	good ⇒ better well ⇒ better bad ⇒ worse little ⇒ less many ⇒ more much ⇒ more far ⇒ farther（距離較遠的）； further（更進一步）

3. 最高級的形成方式：

形成方式	範例
(1) 在後面加上「 est 」	small ⇒ smallest fast ⇒ fastest
(2) 字尾為“子音 + y”時，則「去掉 y，再加 iest 」	dirty ⇒ dirtiest happy ⇒ happiest yummy ⇒ yummiest pretty ⇒ prettiest
(3) 字尾已有“e”時，則「只加 st 」	fine ⇒ finest nice ⇒ nicest true ⇒ truest cute ⇒ cutest
(4) 單音節形容詞字尾是“子音 + 短母音 + 子音”（即「子母子」排列）時，則要「重複字尾，再加 est 」	big ⇒ biggest hot ⇒ hottest thin ⇒ thinnest sad ⇒ saddest
(5) <u>三個音節以上</u> （包含三個）的形容詞，在 前面 加 most ，即「 most + 形容詞 」	interesting ⇒ most interesting expensive ⇒ most expensive delicious ⇒ most delicious difficult ⇒ most difficult
(6) 不規則變化，無規律性	good ⇒ best well ⇒ best bad ⇒ worst little ⇒ least many ⇒ most much ⇒ most far ⇒ farthest （距離最遠的）； furthest （最大限度）

 隨堂小練習

❖ 填充題（寫出下列形容詞的比較級與最高級）

	比較級	最高級
1. long	_____	_____
2. easy	_____	_____
3. hot	_____	_____
4. bad	_____	_____
5. nice	_____	_____
6. smart	_____	_____
7. interesting	_____	_____

二、形容詞「原級」的比較句型

形容詞的原級比較用來比較二個人、事或物在類別或性質上是否相近或相同。

例 1：I am as tall as he.（我和他一樣高。）

例 2：This tape is as cheap as that tape.（這捲膠帶跟那捲膠帶一樣便宜。）

例 3：That guava is **not as yummy as** this papaya.
（那個芭樂沒和這個木瓜一樣好吃。）

例 4：Ann is **not as thin as** Helen.（Ann 沒跟 Helen 一樣瘦。）

★ 註 1：形容詞原級的比較句型會用到「...as...as...」，而二個 **as** 中間則放形容詞的原級。

★ 註 2：在動詞後面加上 **not**，就變成否定句。

★ 註 3：形容詞原級的比較句子，中文翻譯成「……（沒）和 / 跟……一樣……」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. This flower is as _____ as that flower.
(A) good (B) best (C) better (D) well
- () 2. She is _____ I.
(A) as sad (B) sad as (C) as sad as (D) sad
- () 3. I am _____ he.
(A) as not old as (B) not as old as
(C) not as old (D) not old

❖ 翻譯題

1. 那個披薩跟這個蛋糕一樣大。

2. Ben 沒和 Mark 一樣年輕。

三、形容詞「比較級」的比較句型

1. 形容詞比較級用來比較二個人、事或物之間的差別，進行比較後，其結果可分出上下。

例 1 : This peach is **bigger than** that pear. (這顆桃子比那顆梨子大。)

例 2 : The skirt is **more expensive than** that sweater.
(這條裙子比那件毛衣貴。)

例 3 : Kathy is **a little younger than** Bob. (Kathy 比 Bob 年輕一些。)

例 4 : This flower is **much more beautiful than** that flower.
(這朵花比那朵花漂亮多了。)

例 5 : This hamburger is **even bigger than** my face.
(這個漢堡甚至比我的臉還大。)

★ 註 1 : 形容詞比較級的比較句型會用到「...**than**...」，而形容詞的比較級會放在 **than** 前面。

★ 註 2：這種比較級的句子，中文翻譯成「……比……」。

★ 註 3：有時為了加強語氣，可在比較級前加上 a little, much, even, a lot 等。

2. 形容詞比較級還有其他常見用法，我們一起來看看吧！

(1) 「more than...」，用來表示數量「多於……、超過……」。

例 1：There are **more than** fifty people in this house.
(超過 50 人在這棟房子裡。)

例 2：Helen will stay here **more than** seven days.
(Helen 將待在這裡超過 7 天。)

例 3：I need **more than** three people to help me. (我需要 3 人以上來幫我。)

★ 註：「more than...」在句子中會翻譯成「超過……；……以上」。

(2) 「make things worse」，用來表示「使情況(變得)更糟」。

例 1：Anger **makes things worse**. (生氣使情況更糟。)

例 2：Lucy just lost her pet dog. Don't say anything. You will **make things worse**.
(Lucy 剛失去她的寵物狗，不要說話，你會使情況變得更糟。)

(3) 「比較級 and 比較級」，用來表示「……越來越……」。

例 1：His dog **gets bigger and bigger**. (他的狗變得越來越大了。)

例 2：We **get more and more** news. (我們收到越來越多的新聞。)

例 3：Jane **becomes happier and happier**. (Jane 漸漸變得快樂。)

★ 註 1：這種比較級的句子，常與 get、become (變成) 搭配。

★ 註 2：這類比較級的句子，中文翻譯成「……越來越……；……漸漸……」。

(4) 中文裡的「越……就越……」，英文可用「the 比較級, the 比較級」來表示。


例 1：**The older** the car is, **the cheaper** it is. (汽車越老舊，就越便宜。)

例 2：**The more** exercises we do, **the healthier** we are.
(做越多運動，我們越健康。)

例 3：**The worse** the weather is, **the sadder** Jane is.
(天氣越不好，Jane 越傷心。)

★ 註 1：這種句子，就是把比較級放在前面，把主詞和動詞放後面。

★ 註 2：這類句子，中文翻譯成「越……，就越……」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Jane is _____ than Sally.
(A) tall (B) taller (C) very tall (D) much tall
- () 2. Your car is _____ than my car.
(A) the expensive (B) expensiver
(C) expensive (D) more expensive
- () 3. Today is _____ than yesterday.
(A) cold (B) much colder
(C) much more colder (D) most colder

❖ 翻譯題

1. 這隻狗變得越來越大。

2. Paul 有超過 1000 元。

3. Ben 會使情況變得更糟。

4. 她越忙碌，就越快樂。

四、形容詞「最高級」的比較句型

形容詞最高級用來比較三個或以上的人、事或物，表達「……中最……」。

例 1：This car is the cheapest. (這輛車是最便宜的。)

例 2：Dr. Chang is the proudest in our school. (張博士是我們學校裡最驕傲的。)

例 3：That blanket is the most expensive in the shop.
(那條毯子是這家店裡最貴的。)

例 4 : Kelly is the most beautiful of the three girls.

(Kelly 是這 3 個女孩中最漂亮的。)

例 5 : Tom is the strongest of the five men. (Tom 是這 5 個男人中最強壯的。)

例 6 : Carol is the tallest among these girls. (Carol 是這些女孩中最高的。)

例 7 : That sweater is the most expensive among those clothes.

(那件毛衣是那些衣服中最貴的。)

★ 註 1 : 最高級前面要加「the」。

★ 註 2 : 最高級的句子，句尾常用「in + 範圍」或「of + 複數名詞」或「among + 複數名詞」，例如：in our school、of the three girls、among those clothes。

★ 註 3 : 最高級的句子，中文翻譯成「……裡 / 中最……」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. Mike is _____ in this house.

- (A) the younger (B) youngest
(C) the youngest (D) young

() 2. The pink sweater is _____ of these six sweaters.

- (A) smaller (B) the smallest (C) smallest (D) small

() 3. Paul is _____ among those students.

- (A) shorter (B) the short (C) shortest (D) the shortest

❖ 翻譯題

1. Tim 是那 10 個男孩中最高的。

2. Sue 是這個班級裡最可愛的。

3. Ben 是那些男人中最英俊的。

Topic 2 原因從屬連接詞 because

because 是從屬連接詞，用來串連二個有因果關係的句子，中文意思是「因為」，現在就一起來看看它的用法吧。

一、because 的用法及句型

1. because 後面接表示「原因」的句子，它可放在句首，也可放在句中。

例 1 : **Because it is cold, I wear a coat.** (因為天氣冷，我穿了大衣。)

原因 結果

例 2 : **I can't visit you because I am sick.** (因為我生病，我無法拜訪你。)

結果 原因

例 3 : **Because Susan is very busy, she cannot come to your party.**

= Susan cannot come to your party **because she is very busy.**

(因為 Susan 很忙，她無法來妳的派對。)

★ 註：because 後面接的句子可放在句首或句中，放在句首時，二個句子中間須有逗號，放在句中則不用逗號。

2. 中文裡常會說「因為……所以……」，但在英文裡面，because 不會和 so 同時出現。

例 1 : **Because the floor is wet, we have to dry it.**

(因為地板溼了，所以我們必須弄乾它。)

例 2 : **The floor is wet, so we have to dry it.**

(因為地板溼了，所以我們必須弄乾它。)

例 3 : **We can't play baseball because it is raining now.**

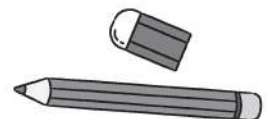
(因為現在在下雨，所以我們無法打棒球。)

例 4 : **It is raining now, so we can't play baseball.**

(因為現在在下雨，所以我們無法打棒球。)

★ 註 1：英文句子中，有 because 就不會有 so，有 so 就不會有 because。

★ 註 2：because 後面接表示「原因」的句子，so 後面接表示「結果」的句子。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

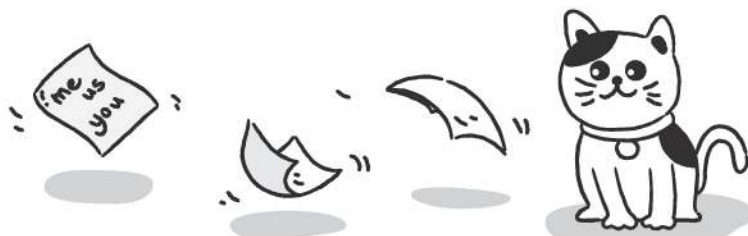
- () 1. May didn't talk to you _____ she had a sore throat.
 (A) so (B) but (C) or (D) because
- () 2. This jacket is too small, _____ I cannot wear it.
 (A) because (B) so (C) or (D) but
- () 3. _____ there wasn't any water, I didn't take a shower last night.
 (A) So (B) But (C) Because (D) And

❖ 翻譯題

1. 因為這本書很有趣，所以 Ken 上星期買了它。

2. 因為 Paul 的機車太小，所以他想買一輛大的。

3. 因為天氣不好，所以我們昨天沒打棒球。





綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. My mother is _____ than your mother.
(A) happy (B) happier (C) happier (D) more happy
- () 2. Her book is _____ among these books.
(A) dirtyest (B) the dirtiest (C) dirtiest (D) the dirtyest
- () 3. Tom is _____ in our class.
(A) the older (B) old (C) oldest (D) the oldest
- () 4. His dog is as _____ as my cat.
(A) small (B) smaller (C) smallest (D) the smallest
- () 5. The mouse is very small _____ it doesn't eat a lot every day.
(A) between (B) but (C) because (D) or
- () 6. The red apple is 10 NT dollars. The green apple is 8 NT dollars.
The green one is _____ .
(A) bigger (B) big (C) cheap (D) cheaper
- () 7. Linda's house is _____ than your house.
(A) biggest (B) bigger (C) big (D) bigger
- () 8. This pencil is _____ in my pencil box.
(A) the longest (B) long (C) longer (D) longest
- () 9. It's pouring (傾盆大雨) now. We should stay at the house. It's
_____.
(A) better (B) good (C) hotter (D) the hottest
- () 10. I'm _____ than you.
(A) sad (B) sadder (C) sader (D) more sad
- () 11. Tina is as _____ as my daughter.
(A) the tallest (B) taller (C) tall (D) tallest

- () 12. A : _____ you please give me that book on the table ?
 B : Sure. Here you go.
 (A) Did (B) Would (C) Must (D) Should
- () 13. Your teacher is _____ than his teacher.
 (A) nicer (B) nice
 (C) niceer (D) more (更) nice
- () 14. That cake is _____ in her store.
 (A) the cheaper (B) the cheapest (C) cheapest (D) cheap
- () 15. This car is _____ than that car.
 (A) good (B) better (C) gooder (D) best
- () 16. Her room is _____ in our house.
 (A) warmer (B) warmest
 (C) the warmest (D) warm
- () 17. Their room is as _____ as our room.
 (A) clean (B) more clean (C) cleaner (D) cleanest
- () 18. Her father is _____ among those men.
 (A) brave (勇敢的) (B) the bravest
 (C) bravest (D) braver
- () 19. Young children really grow (成長) fast. One of my children is
 already _____ than I am. 〈改編自基測 91-2〉
 (A) tall (B) taller (C) tallest (D) the tallest
- () 20. We have to study and we need a _____ place.
 〈改編自基測 99-1〉
 (A) cleaner (B) quieter (C) safer (D) smaller

二、句子重組

1. than / is / faster / That bus / my car.
-

2. newest one / is / This computer / the / in the shop.

3. as / This pen / is / long as / that pencil.

4. interesting / his book. / more / Her book is / than

5. is / expensive / the most / That shirt / in that store.

三、翻譯題

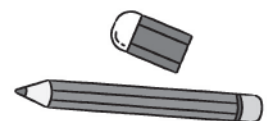
1. Amy is the slowest in her class.

2. Her uncle is as young as my father.

3. That cat is the cutest one in the pet shop.

4. Tim was late for school today because he got up at 9:30 this morning.

5. That comic book is more boring than this one.





綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. Please don't forget your umbrella _____ it is going to rain later.
 (A) so (B) but (C) or (D) because
- () 2. This bird is as _____ as that bird.
 (A) dirtier (B) dirty (C) dirtiest (D) dirtyer
- () 3. Summer is _____ season.
 (A) the hottest (B) hottest (C) hot (D) hotter
- () 4. Timothy is your best friend, so you _____ invite him to your birthday party.
 (A) did (B) may (C) had better (D) does
- () 5. This ball is _____ than that ball.
 (A) big (B) bigger (C) biger (D) more big
- () 6. This shirt is _____ in her wardrobe (衣櫃).
 (A) the newest (B) newest
 (C) newer (D) most newest
- () 7. You have to hurry up (趕快) _____ the bus will arrive in 10 minutes.
 (A) or (B) because (C) so (D) but
- () 8. Your desk is _____ than her desk.
 (A) smallest (B) small (C) smaller (D) more small
- () 9. Is this _____ among these questions?
 (A) a easy (B) a easier (C) the easiest (D) the easier
- () 10. She was _____ girl in the class.
 (A) most cute (B) cuter (C) cutest (D) the cutest

- () 11. Don't drive fast on the road on a rainy day. You _____
slow down (放慢) .
(A) will (B) has to (C) should (D) would
- () 12. The tree grows _____ and _____ every day. It's 3
meters (公尺) high now.
(A) taller ; taller (B) shorter ; shorter
(C) smaller ; smaller (D) heavier ; heavier
- () 13. His English is a lot _____ than his math.
(A) best (B) more better (C) better (D) good
- () 14. This chair is even _____ than that chair.
(A) bader (B) worse (C) bad (D) worst
- () 15. The _____ the party is, the _____ food we must buy.
(A) bigger ; less (B) bigger ; less
(C) bigger ; more (D) bigger ; more
- () 16. The old man looks _____ than my granddaughter (孫女) .
(A) happy (B) happily (C) happier (D) the happiest
- () 17. Business (生意) at Jane's shop is not good these days. And the
new supermarket across the street (對街) only makes things
_____. 〈改編 112 年會考題〉
(A) easier (B) worse
(C) more boring (D) more convenient
- () 18. Pam is a popular baseball player ; she has _____ fans (粉絲)
than any other player on her team. 〈改編 110 年會考題〉
(A) many (B) more (C) much (D) a lot
- () 19. The road ends here ; it won't go any _____. Shouldn't we
turn back (回頭) ? 〈改編自會考 103〉
(A) far (遠的) (B) farther (C) farrer (D) farthest

- () 20. My daughter is much _____ now. 〈改編自基測 100-1〉
 (A) tall (B) taller (C) more tall (D) tallest

二、填空 (請填入正確的形容詞樣態)

1. My house is _____ (big) than your house.
2. Benson is _____ (smart) in his class.
3. His English is as _____ (bad) as my English.
4. That is _____ (new) car in that store.
5. Your bag is _____ (small) than her bag.
6. You are _____ (old) than I.
7. Her sister is _____ (thin) among those girls.
8. Today is as _____ (hot) as yesterday.
9. There are many rooms in this house.

This room is _____ (comfortable 舒適的) .

10. This book is _____ (good) than that book.

三、翻譯題

1. His dream is more interesting than my dream.

2. This shirt is the lightest (light : 輕的) in this store.

3. We will stay at this hotel for more than one week.

4. 她在超市買雞蛋，因為那邊（買）比較便宜。

5. 這本書和那張桌子一樣大。

四、閱讀測驗

I have three students. Tom is the tallest. He plays basketball, and he is Michael Jordan's fan. Ben likes hamburgers and he doesn't like sports. He is heavier (較胖的) than Tom. Jill is a smart girl. She reads more books than the other (其他的) students. She's thinner than Tom.

- () 1. Which student reads the most?
(A) Jill. (B) Ben.
(C) Tom. (D) We don't know.
- () 2. Does Ben like to play basketball?
(A) Yes. (B) No. (C) We don't know.
- () 3. Who is the heaviest student?
(A) Tom. (B) Ben.
(C) Jill. (D) We don't know.





綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A : Is your sister the cutest in her class?

B : Yes, _____ . (請詳答)

2. A : Do you like this movie or that movie?

B : I like this movie.

It is _____ that movie. (比那部電影有趣)

3. A : How do you like this computer game?

B : I don't like it at all (一點也不) .

It's _____ that computer game.

(比那個電腦遊戲無聊)

4. A : Why did you do it?

B : _____ I wanted to do it. (作答提示 : so / because)

5. A : Why did you walk to school today?

B : I didn't take the bus _____ it was full (滿的) .

(作答提示 : so / because) 〈改編 112 年會考題〉

二、翻譯題

1. 你的車和他的車一樣貴。

2. 我們老師的書是這些書裡最有趣的。

3. 這枝筆比那枝鉛筆短嗎？

4. 馬克很生氣因為他的朋友早上遲到了。

5. Mary 是所有女孩裡最漂亮的嗎？

6. 這棟房子比那棟房子便宜。

7. 今天是這週裡最涼的。

8. 我哥哥的房間和我的房間一樣乾淨。

9. 現在越來越多人在午餐後散步 (take a walk)。

10. 他吃了很多麵包因為非常好吃 (美味)。



三、短文英翻中與選擇

1. 短文英翻中

I am looking for an apartment (公寓), and I find two. The first one is closer (更靠近) to my work. It is newer and cleaner. Its rooms are brighter (更明亮). However (然而), it is more expensive. The second one is older. It is cheaper and its rooms are larger. This is a hard choice (選擇) for me because I like both of them. Do you have any idea?

2. 短文選擇

- () (1) Which one has bigger rooms?
 (A) The first one. (B) The second one. (C) We don't know.
- () (2) The author (作者) doesn't have much money. Which one is better?
 (A) The first one.
 (B) The second one.
 (C) They are the same.
- () (3) The second apartment costs (花費) \$500/month. Which price might be the first apartment's price (價格)?
 (A) \$500. (B) \$499.
 (C) \$800. (D) We don't know.



綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

麗莎 (Lisa) 阿姨以前喜歡喝可樂。她那時越來越胖因為她都沒有運動。她減重 (lose weight) 與跑步，所以她現在更美麗了。她比以前更健康了。現在她跟 Jolin 一樣苗條，也是我所有阿姨中最漂亮的。

二、克漏字選擇

Yesterday my brother and I saw a football (美式足球) game. The day was much 1 than the week before. We arrived a little 2 than usual (平常的). We were excited (興奮的) and we loved the teams. The teams were the Eagles and the Hawks.

Eagles was 3 than the other team. They were faster, stronger, and smarter 4 the Hawks. They also played a lot 5 than the Hawks. They 6 by 15 points (分數) in the end.


- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| () 1. (A) cool | (B) warm | (C) hot | (D) colder |
| () 2. (A) early | (B) late | (C) lates | (D) earlier |
| () 3. (A) good | (B) gooder | (C) better | (D) fine |
| () 4. (A) to | (B) from | (C) than | (D) with |
| () 5. (A) bad | (B) worse | (C) good | (D) better |
| () 6. (A) win | (B) wined | (C) won | (D) wins |

三、閱讀測驗

Aunt Polly's Kitchen

Opening hour : 5:30 A.M.-11:30 A.M. Mon. to Sat.

Sandwiches	Drinks
Ham Sandwich.....NTD50 Bread + Egg + Ham	Coffee.....NTD50
Chicken Sandwich.....NTD80 Bread + Chicken + Tomatoes	Black Tea (紅茶) ...NTD30
Vegetable Sandwich.....NTD60 Bread + Vegetable + Cheese (乳酪) + Egg	Green Tea.....NTD30
Pork Sandwich.....NTD70 Bread + Pork + Cheese	Milk Tea.....NTD35



Good News : We have Weekly Special (每週特餐) for NTD75 on Fridays.

- Weekly Special has one sandwich and one drink.

- () 1. Which sandwich is the most expensive one in Aunt Polly's Kitchen?
 (A) Ham Sandwich.
 (B) Chicken Sandwich.
 (C) Vegetable Sandwich.
- () 2. David has 79 dollars and he could buy one sandwich and one drink in this shop today. What day is today?
 (A) Sunday. (B) Monday. (C) Friday.
- () 3. It is Saturday morning. Jonathan would like to have a sandwich and one drink at the same time. Which one could be a cheaper set (經濟套餐) in this shop?
 (A) Pork sandwich and black tea.
 (B) Chicken sandwich and coffee.
 (C) Vegetable sandwich and milk tea.

II-3

副詞及時間從屬連接詞 when、before、after

學習目標

- ① 知道副詞的形成方式、功用、種類以及置放在句中的位置
- ② 學會時間從屬連接詞 when、before、after 的用法



閱讀特快車

The Food for Moon Festival

Moon Festival is one of the biggest festivals in Taiwan. On this holiday, people ^①can't do without yummy food. Usually, people have a barbecue (烤肉) party with their family or friends. There are many kinds of foods for the barbecue like pork, fish, beef, chicken, vegetables and toast. People would enjoy the ^②full moon when they cook busily and eat happily together. However (然而), some people don't like barbecue, so they would choose to have delicious mooncakes (月餅) with tea. That's also a good way to celebrate (慶祝) the holiday. Most of the mooncakes are sweet. Their shape often looks like a full moon. It means to get together with lovely family. Remember to take away the garbage and leave the environment (環境) clean after your meal. This is a good tradition (傳統) for the holiday, too.



文章說明

- ① can't do without : 少不了 (做……不能沒有……)
② full moon : 滿月



文法報報


Topic 1 副詞

形容詞修飾名詞，比方說 a cute girl（一個可愛的女孩），cute 修飾 girl。那動詞要用什麼來修飾呢？以下我們就來看看修飾動詞的副詞吧！順帶一提，副詞也可用來修飾形容詞喔！

一、副詞的形成方式

一部分副詞是由形容詞「規則」或「不規則」變化而來，接下來讓我們來看看如何變化。

變化方式	範例
(1) 在形容詞字尾加上「ly」	slow ⇒ slowly famous ⇒ famously weak ⇒ weakly successful ⇒ successfully
(2) 形容詞字尾為“y”時，則「去掉 y，再加 ily」	happy ⇒ happily busy ⇒ busily crazy ⇒ crazily
(3) 形容詞字尾為“le”時，則「去掉 e，加上 y」	terrible（可怕的）⇒ terribly（可怕地） comfortable（舒服的）⇒ comfortably（舒服地）
(4) 形容詞字尾為“ll”時，則加「y」	full ⇒ fully
(5) 形容詞字尾為“ic”時，則加「ally」	romantic（浪漫的）⇒ romantically（浪漫地） ironic（諷刺的）⇒ ironically（諷刺地）
(6) 不規則變化，無規律性	good ⇒ well
(7) 形容詞與副詞同形	fast ⇒ fast early ⇒ early late ⇒ late much ⇒ much
(8) 形容詞與副詞同形，但意思不同	hard（困難的、堅硬的）⇒ hard（努力地） pretty（美麗的）⇒ pretty（相當地）

 隨堂小練習

❖ 填充題（寫出下列形容詞的副詞）

1. quick (快的) _____ (快地)
2. easy (容易的) _____ (容易地)
3. nice (美好的) _____ (美好地)
4. sad (傷心的) _____ (傷心地)
5. careful (小心的) _____ (小心地)
6. heavy (重的) _____ (重地)

二、副詞的功用

副詞可以修飾動詞，也可修飾形容詞。

1. 修飾動詞

例 1 : Jim closed the door **lightly**. (Jim 輕輕地關上門。)

例 2 : Kelly is playing **happily**. (Kelly 正開心地玩著。)

★ 註：上面例句裡，副詞 **lightly** 修飾「closed the door」這個動作，副詞 **happily** 修飾「is playing」這個動作。

2. 修飾形容詞

例 1 : The answer is **absolutely** wrong. (這個答案絕對是錯的。)

例 2 : Kelly is **famously** tall. (Kelly 出名地高。)

★ 註：上面例句裡，副詞 **absolutely** 修飾「wrong」這個形容詞，副詞 **famously** 修飾「tall」這個形容詞。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Kelly rides a bike _____ .
 (A) careful (B) care (C) carefully (D) cares
- () 2. She is shouting _____ .
 (A) angrily (B) angry (C) angryly (D) angried
- () 3. This dog is _____ fat.
 (A) prettyly (B) prettied (C) pretly (D) pretty

❖ 翻譯題

1. 那些男孩正開心地吃著晚餐。

2. Ben 昨天晚回家。

三、副詞的種類、用途與位置

英文中比較常見的副詞有情態副詞、時間副詞、地方副詞與頻率副詞，它們各自有其用途和句子裡的對應位置，且看以下說明。

(一) 情態副詞的用途與位置

1. 情態副詞的用途

情態副詞用來描述「動作的狀態」，表達動作是「如何進行」的。

例 1：We drive **carefully**. (我們小心地開車。)

例 2：That student sadly **shouted**. (那個學生難過地大叫。)

例 3：Kelly is playing **happily**. (Kelly 正開心地玩著。)

★ 註：上面例句中的 **carefully**、**sadly** 和 **happily** 就是所謂的情態副詞，用來說明如何進行 **drive**、**shouted** 和 **is playing** 這些動作。

2. 情態副詞在句子裡的位置

(1) 放在動詞的後面，也可放在動詞前面。

例 1 : My dad drives **carefully**.

My dad **carefully** drives. (我爸爸小心地開車。)

例 2 : These girls sang **happily** last week.

These girls **happily** sang last week.

(這些女孩上星期開心地唱歌。)

(2) 動詞後面有受詞時，可以放在受詞的後面，也可以放在動詞前面。

例 1 : My dad drives my car **carefully**.

My dad **carefully** drives my car. (我爸爸小心地開我的車。)

例 2 : These girls sang the song **happily** last week.

These girls **happily** sang the song last week.

(這些女孩上星期開心地唱這首歌。)

★ 註 1 : 上面例句裡的受詞分別為 **my car** 和 **the song**，情狀副詞也可以放在受詞後面。

★ 註 2 : 情狀副詞也可以放在動詞前面，如上面例句，在 **drives** 和 **sang** 前面。

(3) 動詞後面有介系詞時，可以放在動詞前面或動詞後面，還可以放在受詞的後面。

例 1 : He **angrily** talked to his mother.

He talked **angrily** to his mother.

He talked to his mother **angrily**. (他生氣地跟他媽媽說話。)

例 2 : The foreigner **slowly** spoke to my brother.

The foreigner spoke **slowly** to my brother.

The foreigner spoke to my brother **slowly**.

(這位外國人慢慢地跟我弟弟說話。)

★ 註 1 : 情狀副詞可以放在動詞前面或後面，如上面例句，在 **talked** 和 **spoke** 的前或後。

★ 註 2 : 上面例句裡的受詞分別為 **his mother** 和 **my brother**，情狀副詞也可以放在受詞後面。

(4) 在進行式的句子裡，可以放在 Be 動詞跟 V-ing 之間或是句尾。

例 1：He is slowly running.

He is running slowly. (他正慢慢地跑步。)

例 2：She is carefully turning her head.

She is turning her head carefully. (她正小心地轉動她的頭。)

(5) 放在句首以加強語氣。

例 1：**Heavily**, Ben sat on the chair. (Ben 沉重地坐到椅子上。)

例 2：**Quietly**, the dog jumped onto the car. (那隻狗安靜地跳上車子。)

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. Jane runs _____ .

(A) fastly (B) fastily (C) fast (D) fasily

() 2. Ben speaks English _____ .

(A) good (B) well (C) goodly (D) goodily

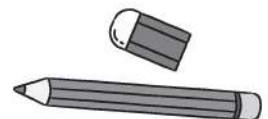
() 3. We are _____ walking.

(A) quick (B) quicily (C) quickly (D) quickily

❖ 翻譯題

1. 那些男孩正開心地打著籃球。

2. 我弟弟昨晚傷心地吃晚餐。



(二) 時間副詞的用途與位置

1. 時間副詞的用途

時間副詞跟時間有關係，用來說明動作是在「什麼時候」發生。

例 1：These boys play in the park **every day**. (這些男孩每天在公園玩。)

例 2：My brother mopped the floor **last night**. (我哥哥昨晚拖了地板。)

例 3：My father is preparing our dinner **now**.
(我爸爸現在正在準備我們的晚餐。)

★ 註：上面例句中的 **every day**、**last night** 和 **now** 都是時間副詞。而因為時間不同，也要留意動詞的變化。

2. 時間副詞在句子裡的位置

(1) 放在句尾。

例 1：They go to the library **every day**. (他們每天去圖書館。)

例 2：They moved to Japan **last month**. (他們上個月搬去日本。)

(2) 放在句首以加強語氣。

例 1：**Tomorrow** I will go to Taipei. (明天我將去台北。)

例 2：**Now** my brother is mopping the floor. (現在我哥哥正在拖地。)

(3) 一個句子中同時出現兩個時間，短時間在前，長時間在後。

例 1：Mike gets up at **5 a.m. every day**. (Mike 每天早上 5 點起床。)

例 2：We were playing tennis at **5 p.m. yesterday**.
(我們昨天下午 5 點在打網球。)



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Mike went to America _____ .
 (A) last year (B) next year (C) every year (D) now
- () 2. Tina eats lunch at this restaurant _____ .
 (A) yesterday (B) every week
 (C) last week (D) next week
- () 3. The party was _____ .
 (A) 6 p.m. Sunday (B) last Sunday at 6 p.m.
 (C) 6 p.m. last Sunday (D) at 6 p.m. last Sunday

❖ 翻譯題

1. 明天 Tim 將有一個英文測驗。

2. Sue 昨天晚上 8:00 看電視。

(三) 地方副詞的用途與位置

1. 地方副詞的用途

地方副詞跟地點有關係，用來說明事物在何處或動作是在「什麼地方」發生。

例 1：Tom lived **here** last summer. (Tom 去年夏天住在這裡。)

例 2：There is a basket **on the table**. (桌上有個籃子。)

例 3：My father is jogging **in the park**. (我爸爸現在正在公園裡慢跑。)

★ 註：上面例句中的 **here**、**on the table** 和 **in the park** 都是地方副詞。常見的地方副詞還有：there、at + 地方。

2. 地方副詞在句子裡的位置

(1) 放在一般動詞的後面。

例 1：Please go there. (請去那裡。)

例 2：She studied abroad six years ago. (她 6 年前在國外讀書。)

(2) 地方副詞 here、there 可放在句首以加強語氣。

例 1：There goes the bus. (公車離開了。)

例 2：Here is your bag. (妳的袋子在這兒。)

★ 註：主詞是名詞時，動詞要放在主詞的前面。例如：上面例句中動詞 goes 和 is 放在名詞 the bus 和 your bag 的前面。

例 3：There they hide. (他們躲在那裡。)

例 4：Here he is. (他在這兒。)

★ 註：主詞是代名詞時，動詞要放在主詞後面。例如：上面例句中動詞 hide 和 is 放在代名詞 they 和 he 的後面。

(3) 同時有二個地方副詞時，小地方在前，大地方在後。

例 1：Mike lives **on a small farm in Nantou**. (Mike 住在南投的小農場。)

★ 註：通常位於一個平面上，前面會用介系詞 on。例如：上面例句中的 on a small farm。

例 2：We study **at a school in Taipei**. (我們在台北的一所學校讀書。)

★ 註：通常位於一個定點或是小地方，前面會用介系詞 at。位於一個空間裡或是大地方，前面會用介系詞 in。例如：上面例句中的 at a school 以及 in Taipei。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Mike _____ three days ago.
 (A) here stayed (B) stayed here
 (C) stays here (D) here stay
- () 2. Here _____ .
 (A) your lunch (B) your lunch is
 (C) be your lunch (D) is your lunch
- () 3. The party was _____ .
 (A) in Taipei at Tina's house (B) at Tina's house in Taipei
 (C) at Tina's house Taipei (D) in Tina's house at Taipei

❖ 翻譯題

1. 他們 30 分鐘前在那裡打羽毛球。

2. Sue 的毛衣在她房間地板上。

(四) 頻率副詞的用途與位置

1. 頻率副詞的用途

表示一個動作或狀態發生的頻率或次數，例如：總是、經常、不常，這些就是頻率副詞。

例 1：May **always** drinks coffee in the morning. (May 總是在早上喝咖啡。)

例 2：Mark **often** sees a movie. (Mark 常常看電影。)

例 3：My father is **never** late for work. (我爸爸從不上班遲到。)

★ 註：上面例句中的 **always**、**often** 和 **never** 都是很常見的頻率副詞。

2. 頻率副詞代表的動作發生頻率

以下列出常見的頻率副詞，依動作發生的頻率由高至低排列：



- **hardly ever**：幾乎沒有

3. 頻率副詞在句子裡的位置

(1) 放在一般動詞的前面。

例 1：My grandmother **always** goes to bed at 10 p.m.
(我的祖母總是在晚上 10 點睡覺。)

例 2：We **never** smoke. (我們從不抽菸。)

(2) 放在 Be 動詞的後面。

例 1：He is **usually** very busy. (他通常非常忙碌。)

例 2：She is **seldom** late for school. (她上學不常遲到。)

(3) 放在助動詞的後面。

例 1：You should **often** exercise. (你們應該常常運動。)

例 2：I will **never** cut your hair. (我絕對不會剪你的頭髮。)

(4) **usually** 與 **sometimes** 也可放在句首。

例 1：**Usually** she fills the packages. (通常由她裝包裹。)

例 2：**Sometimes** I hang out with friends on Sunday.
(有時我星期日會跟朋友出去玩。)

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Mike _____ sad.
 (A) seldom (B) seldom is
 (C) is seldom (D) be seldom
- () 2. They _____ baseball on Wednesday.
 (A) play usually (B) usually play
 (C) usually (D) usually playing
- () 3. You _____ us.
 (A) can visit sometimes (B) sometimes visit can
 (C) sometimes can visit (D) can sometimes visit

❖ 翻譯題

1. 這些男孩總是晚上 8:00 吃晚餐。

2. Sue 不常煮飯。

(五) 副詞 too 和 either 的用途與位置

副詞不全然是形容詞「規則」或「不規則」變化而來，有些字本身就可以當副詞使用，例如接下來要介紹的 too 和 either 就是如此，讓我們一起來看看它們的用途以及在句中的位置吧！

1. too 的用途與位置

too 當「太」解釋，用來修飾形容詞，會置於形容詞前面。too 亦可當「也」解釋，與肯定句搭配，會放在句尾，前面要有逗號。

例 1：This box is **too heavy** for me. (這個箱子對我來說太重了。)

例 2 : That English test is **too difficult** for Mark.

(那個英文測驗對 Mark 來說太困難。)

★ 註：上面例句裡的 **too** 當「太」解釋，放在形容詞 **heavy** 以及 **difficult** 前面，用來修飾它們。

例 3 : My father can speak French. My mother can speak French, **too**.

(我爸爸會說法文。我媽媽也會說法文。)

例 4 : I like beef noodles. Ken likes them, **too**. (我喜歡牛肉麵。Ken 也喜歡。)

★ 註：上面例句裡的 **too** 當「也」解釋，放在肯定句的句尾，前面有逗號。

2. either 的用途與位置

either 當「也」解釋，與否定句搭配，會放在句尾，前面要有逗號。

例 1 : Paul doesn't love this snack. I don't love it, **either**.

(Paul 不愛這個點心。我也不愛。)

例 2 : I didn't drink lemon juice yesterday. Ken didn't drink it, **either**.

(我昨天沒喝檸檬汁。Ken 也沒喝。)

★ 註：**either** 要放在否定句的句尾，前面有逗號。



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. Mike can dance. I can dance _____ .

(A) either (B) , too (C) , either (D) too

() 2. He won't eat at that restaurant. I won't eat at that restaurant

_____ .
(A) , either (B) , too (C) , and (D) , so

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我弟弟也喜歡看電視。

2. Tina 也不吃芭樂。

 文法補充站

〈 情態 / 地方 / 時間副詞的先後放置順序 〉

倘若一個句子中同時有情態、地方及時間副詞，其排列順序為：情態副詞 + 地方副詞 + 時間副詞。

例 1 : She walks slowly in the park every morning.
(她每天早上在公園裡慢慢地走。)

★ 註：情態副詞 slowly + 地方副詞 in the park + 時間副詞 every morning

例 2 : My brother ran fast on the playground yesterday afternoon.
(我哥哥昨天下午在運動場上迅速地跑步。)

★ 註：情態副詞 fast + 地方副詞 on the playground + 時間副詞 yesterday afternoon

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Mike danced _____ .
 (A) happily at the party last Friday
 (B) happily last Friday at the party
 (C) at the party last Friday happily
 (D) at the party happily last Friday
- () 2. He is shouting _____ .
 (A) angrily now in the living room
 (B) angrily in the living room now
 (C) now angrily in the living room
 (D) in the living room now angrily

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我弟弟每天在家裡快樂地看電視。

2. Tina 現在正忙碌地在廚房裡煮晚餐。

文法得來速

❖ 情態副詞：用來修飾動作或表達動作如何進行

情態副詞(例)	位置	例 句
carefully	動詞後	We <u>drive carefully</u> .
	動詞前 ^①	We <u>carefully drive</u> .
	動詞前 ^②	We <u>carefully drive the car</u> .
	受詞後	We drive <u>the car carefully</u> .
heavily	句首	<u>Heavily</u> , Ben sat on the chair.

註：副詞放在句首以加強語氣，修飾整個句子。

❖ 時間副詞：用來說明動作發生的時間

時間副詞(例)	位置	例 句
tomorrow	句尾	I will go to Taipei tomorrow.
	句首	Tomorrow I will go to Taipei.
every day	句尾	Mike gets up at <u>5 a.m. every day</u> . 短時間 長時間

註：1. 時間副詞放句首以加強語氣，修飾整個句子。
2. 一個句子同時有兩個時間，短時間在前，長時間在後。
3. 其他時間副詞：last night / last month / now / every morning / next week / today / yesterday / tomorrow morning / tomorrow evening……等。

❖ 地方副詞：用來說明動作發生的地點或事物在何處

地方副詞(例)	位置	例 句
here	動詞後	Tom lived here last summer.
	句首	Here is your bag.
in the park	句尾	My father is jogging in the park .
at a school in Taipei	句尾	We study <u>at a school in Taipei</u> . 小地方 大地方

註：1. 地方副詞 (**here / there**) 放句首以加強語氣，修飾整個句子。
 2. 同時有兩個地方副詞時，小地方在前，大地方在後。
 3. 其他地方副詞：**at home / at the restaurant / on the table / under the desk / in the movie theater / in the bag**……等。

❖ 頻率副詞：用來說明事情或動作發生的頻率

頻率副詞(例)	位置	例 句
usually	Be 動詞後面	He is usually very busy.
always	動詞前面	May always drinks coffee in the morning.
never	助動詞和動詞間	I will never cut your hair.
sometimes	句首	Sometimes I hang out with friends on Sunday.

❖ 副詞：too / either ⇒ 也

副詞	位置	語氣	例句
too	句尾	肯定句	I like beef noodles. Ken likes them, too .
either	句尾	否定句	Paul doesn't love this snack. I don't love it, either .

Topic 2 時間從屬連接詞 when、before、after

when、before 和 after 是表示「時間」的從屬連接詞，用來串連二個有時間關係的句子，現在就一起來看看它們的用法吧。

一、when 的用法及句型

1. when 是「當……時候」的意思，可放在句首，也可放在句中。

例 1：When he feels sad, he eats ice cream.
= He eats ice cream when he feels sad.
(當他感到悲傷的時候，他吃冰淇淋。)

例 2：When I was eating cake, Jim was drinking milk.
= Jim was drinking milk when I was eating cake.
(當我在吃蛋糕的時候，Jim 正在喝牛奶。)

例 3：When I go to Jim's home tomorrow, he will tell me a story.
= Jim will tell me a story when I go to his home tomorrow.
(當我明天去 Jim 家的時候，他會告訴我一個故事。)

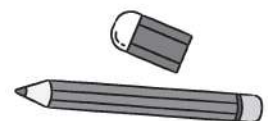
★ 註 1：when 後面接的句子可放在句首或句中，放在句首時，二個句子中間須有逗號，放在句中則不用逗號。

★ 註 2：when 後面接「表示未來」的句子時，這個句子要用現在式來表示，而非用未來式，例如：上面例 3 裡的「I go to Jim's house tomorrow / I go to his house tomorrow」。

2. when 所引導的句子，主詞如果和另一個句子的主詞相同時，則可省略主詞，並將動詞改為 V-ing 的形式。

例 1：When the boy saw his teacher, he stopped talking.
= When seeing his teacher, the boy stopped talking.
(當這個男孩看到老師的時候，他停止說話。)

★ 註：when 後面的句子 (the boy saw his teacher) 和另一句 (he stopped talking) 的主詞都是 the boy，因此 when 句子裡的主詞可省略，並把動詞改為 V-ing 的形式，如上例中的 When the boy saw his teacher 寫成 When seeing his teacher。



- 例 2 : Jane visited her aunt in America when she **was** a little girl.
 = Jane visited her aunt in America when **being** a little girl.
 (當 Jane 是小女孩的時候，她拜訪了在美國的阿姨。)

★ 註：when 後面的 she was a little girl 和 Jane visited her aunt 的主詞都是 Jane，因此 when 句子裡的主詞可省略，並把動詞改為 V-ing 的形式，如上例中的 when she was a little girl 寫成 when being a little girl。

 隨堂小練習

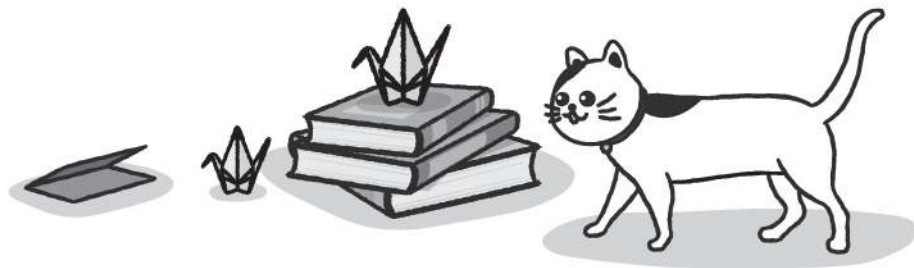
❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Keep quiet _____ you have a test.
 (A) and (B) when (C) or (D) so
- () 2. _____ free time, I enjoy reading books.
 (A) When have (B) When I having
 (C) When having (D) When has

❖ 翻譯題

1. 昨天當 Sue 聽到這個消息時，她非常難過。

2. 當 Paul 感到快樂的時候，他會跳舞。



二、before 的用法及句型

1. before 是「在……之前」的意思，用來表達事件發生的先後順序。before 可放在句首，也可放在句中。

例 1 : **Before** I go to school, I always eat breakfast.
= I always eat breakfast **before** I go to school.
(去學校之前，我總是吃早餐。)

例 2 : **Before** she went home, she finished her homework.
= She finished her homework **before** she went home.
(在回家之前，她完成了作業。)

例 3 : **Before** Ken does his homework, he will clean his desk.
= Ken will clean his desk **before** he does his homework.
(Ken 做作業之前會清理他的書桌。)

★ 註 1 : before 後面接的句子，表達的是**後發生的動作**，例如：上面例句中的「I go to school」和「she went home」。而另一個句子表達的是**先發生的動作**，例如上面例句中的「I always eat breakfast」和「she finished her homework」。

★ 註 2 : before 後面接的句子可放在句首或句中，放在句首時，二個句子中間須有逗號，放在句中則不用逗號。

★ 註 3 : before 後面接「表示未來」的句子時，這個句子要用現在式來表示，不用未來式，例如：上面例 3 裡的「Ken does his homework」。

2. before 所引導的句子，主詞如果和另一個句子的主詞相同時，則可省略主詞，並將動詞改為 V-ing 的形式。

例 1 : Before Ellen goes to bed, he always drinks a glass of milk.
= Before **going** to bed, Ellen always drinks a glass of milk.
(上床睡覺之前，Ellen 總是喝一杯牛奶。)

★ 註 : before 後面的句子 (Ellen goes to bed) 和另一句 (he always drinks a glass of milk) 的主詞都是 Ellen，因此 before 句子裡的主詞可省略，並把動詞改為 V-ing 的形式，如上例中的 Before Ellen goes to bed 寫成 Before going to bed。

例 2 : Jane visited her aunt before she went to America.
= Jane visited her aunt before **going** to America.
(Jane 去美國之前，拜訪了她的阿姨。)

- ★ 註：before後面的she went to America和Jane visited her aunt的主詞都是Jane，因此before句子裡的主詞可省略，並把動詞改為V-ing的形式，如上例中的before she went to America寫成before going to America。

 隨堂小練習

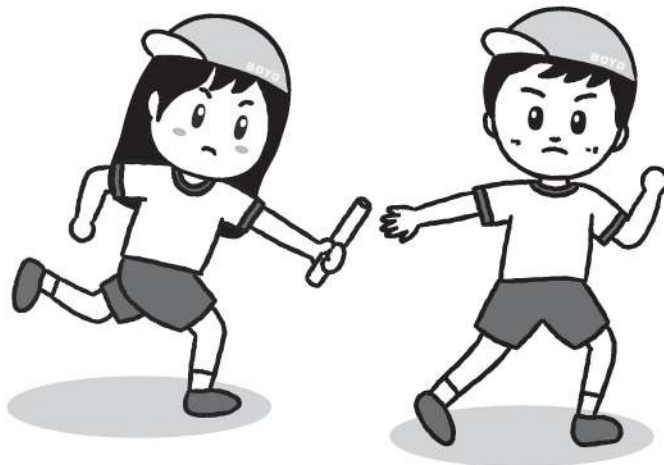
❖ 選擇題

- () 1. He brushes his teeth _____ breakfast.
 (A) before eating (B) before he eating
 (C) before he eat (D) before eat
- () 2. _____ a cake, I bought some milk.
 (A) Before make (B) Before I making
 (C) Before making (D) Before made

❖ 翻譯題

1. 他們每天寫作業之前看電視。

2. Paul 吃飯之前先吃了魚。



三、after 的用法及句型

1. **after** 是「在……之後」的意思，表達事件發生的先後順序。**after** 可放在句首，也可放在句中。

例 1 : **After** I brush my teeth, I go to bed.

= I go to bed **after** I brush my teeth. (我刷牙之後就上床睡覺。)

例 2 : **After** Kelly heard the news, she felt sad.

= Kelly felt sad **after** she heard the news. (Kelly 聽到消息之後，感到難過。)

例 3 : **After** we finish homework, we will go to the department store.

= We will go to the department store **after** we finish homework.

(我們完成作業之後就會去百貨公司。)

★ 註1 : **after**後面接的句子，表達的是**先發生的動作**，例如：上面例句中的「I brush my teeth」和「Kelly heard the news」。而另一個句子表達的是**後發生的動作**，例如上面例句中的「I go to bed」和「she felt sad」。

★ 註2 : **after**後面接的句子可放在句首或句中，放在句首時，二個句子中間須有逗號，放在句中則不用逗號。

★ 註3 : **after**後面接「表示未來」的句子時，這個句子要用現在式來表示，不用未來式，例如：上面例3裡的「we finish homework」。

2. **after**所引導的句子，主詞如果和另一個句子的主詞相同時，則可省略主詞，並將動詞改為V-ing的形式。

例 1 : **After** Ellen eats dinner, he takes a bath.

= **After** **eating** dinner, Ellen takes a bath. (吃晚餐之後，Ellen 會去洗澡。)

★ 註 : **after**後面的句子 (Ellen eats dinner) 和另一句 (he takes a bath) 的主詞都是Ellen，因此**after**句子裡的主詞可省略，並把動詞改為V-ing的形式，如上例中的After Ellen eats dinner寫成After eating dinner。

例 2 : Jane did the dishes **after** she ate her lunch.

= Jane did the dishes **after** **eating** her lunch.

(吃完午餐之後，Jane 洗碗盤。)

★ 註 : **after**後面的she ate her lunch和Jane did the dishes的主詞都是Jane，因此**after**句子裡的主詞可省略，並把動詞改為V-ing的形式，如上例中的after she ate her lunch寫成after eating her lunch。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. He eats breakfast _____ teeth.
 (A) after he brushing (B) after brushing
 (C) after he brush (D) after brush
- () 2. _____ some milk, I made a cake.
 (A) After buy (B) After I buying
 (C) After buying (D) After bought

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我媽媽昨晚吃完晚餐後喝了一杯牛奶。

2. 我每天吃晚餐後讀書。



文法得來速

❖ 時間從屬連接詞：when / before / after

連接詞	位置	例 句
when	句中	Jim was drinking milk when I was eating cake.
	句首	When I was eating cake, Jim was drinking milk.
before	句中	She finished her homework before she went home.
	句首	Before she went home, she finished her homework.
after	句中	We will go to the department store after we finish homework.
	句首	After we finish homework, we will go to the department store.

- 註：1. When / Before / After 放句首時，二個句子中間須有逗號。
 2. 時間從屬連接詞前後連接的句子大部分會時態一致，但未來式不在此限。
 3. 時間從屬連接詞的句型「表示未來」時，when / before / after 後面的句子須以現在式代替未來式。



❖ 因果從屬連接詞：because / so

連接詞	位置	例 句
because	句中	Susan cannot come to your party because she is very busy.
	句首	Because Susan is very busy, she cannot come to your party.
so	句中	Susan is very busy, so she cannot come to your party.

- 註：1. **Because** 放句首時，二個句子中間須有逗號。
 2. 中文常說「因為……所以……」。但在一個英文句子中，**because** 和 **so** 不會同時出現。
 3. **because** 後面接表示「原因」的句子，**so** 後面接表示「結果」的句子。





綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. The children are playing _____ in the garden.
(A) happy (B) happily (C) happier (D) happiest
- () 2. You _____ ask the teacher questions.
(A) can always (B) always will
(C) are always (D) always could
- () 3. Vincent will wash his car after he _____ the TV news.
(A) watching (B) will watch (C) watched (D) watches
- () 4. My dad _____ to the gym on rainy days.
(A) seldom go (B) goes often (C) never goes (D) go always
- () 5. Did Sam study math at home _____ ?
(A) now (B) this morning
(C) tomorrow (D) next Monday
- () 6. Tina and her parents live _____ .
(A) in Yilan a farm (B) a farm at Yilan
(C) on a farm in Yilan (D) at Yilan in a farm
- () 7. Joyce is a good student. She _____ late for school.
(A) never be (B) always is (C) will never (D) is never
- () 8. Ivy : I don't like to drink milk. Ben : _____
(A) I don't, too. (B) I don't, either.
(C) I too don't. (D) I either don't.
- () 9. Please wash your hands _____ you eat snacks.
(A) before (B) and (C) so (D) but
- () 10. Alex : I can't find my eraser. Where is it? Jim : _____
(A) Here is it. (B) It is on there.
(C) There it is. (D) It's to here.

- () 11. I have to brush my teeth before _____ to bed.
 (A) go (B) going (C) went (D) to go
- () 12. Jamie will take the medicine after he _____ his meal.
 (A) will finish (B) finishing (C) finishes (D) finished
- () 13. We must talk _____, or we might wake the baby up (吵醒……) .
 (A) quiet (B) loudly (大聲地)
 (C) loud (大聲的) (D) quietly
- () 14. Vicky : I can swim fast. How about you?
 David : I can swim fast, _____ .
 (A) also (B) either (C) too (D) so
- () 15. Gary likes to eat at home because his wife cooks very _____ .
 (A) good (B) well (C) better (D) best
- () 16. _____, the students are singing and dancing in the classroom.
 (A) Last night (B) Tomorrow
 (C) Now (D) Every morning
- () 17. Mom was mopping the floor _____ I got home.
 (A) when (B) during (C) after (D) so
- () 18. Amanda will not go to Ken's party, and I won't, _____ .
 (A) too (B) also (C) so (D) either
- () 19. Frank's grandmother goes to bed _____ .
 (A) ten every night (B) at ten every night
 (C) every day at ten (D) ten p.m.
- () 20. Spring is a wonderful season because it _____ warm and sunny. <改編自基測 95-1>
 (A) seldom is (B) is usually
 (C) will always (D) often was

二、句子重組

1. amazingly / That actor / handsome. / is

2. train / Here / the / comes / .

3. usually / at 6:00 a.m. / gets up / Felix / every day.

4. caught / last night. / Luckily, / we / the last bus

5. before / the grapes / You should / wash / eating them.

三、翻譯題

1. Peter can't ride a motorcycle, and I can't, either.

2. This question is too difficult for my students.

3. When I am sad, I always eat a lot of cakes.

4. The students are reading books quietly in the library.

5. Roxie will walk her dog after having dinner.



綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. I love to lie (躺) _____ on the comfortable sofa.
 (A) lazy (懶散的) (B) lazily
 (C) laziness (懶惰) (D) lazily
- () 2. Luke doesn't have a motorcycle, and I don't, _____ .
 (A) also (B) too (C) either (D) so
- () 3. Joe and I study and play together. We are best friends. We _____ friends.
 (A) can be always (B) will always
 (C) always will be (D) will always be
- () 4. _____ cooking lunch, Anita cleaned the kitchen right away (立刻) .
 (A) Before (B) After (C) When (D) During
- () 5. Bill : Do you see my cellphone? Kate : Here _____ .
 (A) is it (B) it does (C) it is (D) does it
- () 6. Tom Cruise is my favorite actor. He acts (演戲) _____ .
 (A) really well (B) very good
 (C) real (真實的) well (D) real good
- () 7. You had better brush your teeth _____ you go to bed.
 (A) when (B) after (C) because (D) before
- () 8. Martin _____ home so his parents miss him very much.
 (A) comes always (B) seldom comes
 (C) never is (D) often be
- () 9. Dad reads newspapers _____ .
 (A) every morning in the living room quietly
 (B) quietly in the living room every morning
 (C) quietly every morning in the living room
 (D) in the living room every morning quietly

- () 10. I will give you a call (給……打電話) after the meeting _____ .
(A) finishes (B) will finish (C) to finish (D) finished
- () 11. Jess : I usually see a movie on Saturday nights.
Chris : _____
(A) I do also! (B) I too see!
(C) I do, too! (D) I do, either!
- () 12. This teacher speaks _____ so many students like his class.
(A) humor (幽默) (B) humorous (幽默的)
(C) humorously (D) humorously
- () 13. Kelly is studying math _____ the small desk _____
my room.
(A) to ; in (B) in ; at (C) at ; in (D) for ; on
- () 14. I want to make more money (賺錢) so I work _____ .
(A) very hardly (幾乎不) (B) very hard
(C) prettily hard (D) real hard
- () 15. Emma doesn't have meals at home every day. _____ she
eats out (在外用餐) .
(A) Sometimes (B) Never (C) Always (D) Seldom
- () 16. I was playing with my phone _____ the light turned red, so
a few drivers honked (按喇叭) at me. <改編 111 年會考補考題>
(A) before (B) after (C) when (D) during
- () 17. Calvin tells his mother everything. He _____ hides anything
from her. <改編 108 年會考題>
(A) always (B) often (C) usually (D) never
- () 18. It's raining _____. You had better stay here until (直到) the
rain stops. <改編 102 年會考題>
(A) heavily (B) heavier (C) heavy (D) heaviest
- () 19. I will bring a map with me when _____ the city for the first
time. <改編 106 年會考題>
(A) I will visit (B) to visit
(C) I visit (D) I am visiting

- () 20. Frank read a comic book yesterday, and his brother did,
 _____ . 〈改編基測 90-1〉
- (A) either (B) too
 (C) also (D) both (兩者都)

二、填空

1. My younger sister always gets up _____ (late) .
2. The girl can sing English songs _____ (good) .
3. Lucy is _____ (busy) cooking dinner in the kitchen now.
4. Henry wants to get good grades (成績) so he studies very
 _____ (hard) .
5. He was _____ (true) happy when he heard the news.
6. Please drive more _____ (careful) on rainy days.
7. You are speaking too _____ (fast) . Slow down (放慢一點), please.
8. _____ (unlucky) , I lost my wallet when I went shopping this morning.
9. Gary loves to lie (躺) _____ (comfortable) on this sofa.
10. We must clean our room _____ (quick : 快的) , or Mom will be angry.

三、翻譯題

1. Karen didn't sleep well last night.
-

2. Everyone can answer that question because it is too easy.

3. Fiona will not go to the party tonight, and I won't, either.

4. 請勿在圖書館裡大聲地 (loudly) 交談。

5. 我在寫完作業之後將會看電視。(...after...)

四、閱讀測驗

Benson usually walks to school, but he didn't go to school on foot (步行) today. He got up late because he went to bed too late last night. Plus (此外), he ate his breakfast too slowly. He didn't have time to walk to school, so he chose (選擇) to take the bus. Sadly, he lost his way (迷路) because he never took a bus before. But do not worry; Benson called his mom for help. In the end (最後), Benson's mom drove him to school.

- () 1. How does Benson usually go to school?
(A) By bus. (B) By bike. (C) On foot. (D) By taxi.
- () 2. Did Benson get up early this morning?
(A) Yes. (B) No. (C) We don't know.
- () 3. How did Benson arrive at school at last (最後)?
(A) On foot. (B) By bus. (C) By bike. (D) By car.





綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A : Does your brother run very fast?

B : No, he _____ . (跑得很慢)

2. A : What is Tina doing in her room?

B : She _____ in her room.
(她正在她房間裡開心地聽音樂。)

3. A : When will the students take the math test?

B : They _____ . (明天下午)

4. A : Where's my car key? I remember putting it on the table.

B : There _____ . It's _____ .
(它在那裡。它在水果籃裡面。)

5. A : Can you teach me English?

B : Sure! I will _____ my
homework. (我寫完作業後就會教你。)

二、翻譯題

1. 她最好的朋友住在台北。

2. 昨晚你姊姊哭得很傷心。

3. 我們很少在星期天早起。

4. 那個護士正在忙碌地工作。

5. 我的爺爺總是晚上八點去睡覺。

6. 昨天早上，在公園前面有很多台公車。

7. 他時常安靜地在客廳裡的沙發上看書。

8. 在你們吃點心之前，請洗手。（Before...）

9. 當那些學生看見他們的老師時，他們變得安靜。（...when...）

10. 明天他洗完車之後將會去動物園。（Tomorrow...after...）

三、短文英翻中與選擇

1. 短文英翻中

Before Andrew was eleven years old, his family lived in the mountains (在山裡). Their house was far from (離……遠) his school. He had to get up very early and walk to school every morning. His school was not big, and there were just ten students in his class. Andrew and his classmates loved to play in the mountains after school. They climbed trees, picked (摘) fruits and caught insects. Everything was so interesting then. Andrew really misses his life (生活) in the mountains.



綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

我的表哥是一名工程師。他常常很晚睡，有時候週末還要工作。當他有空時，他總是跟朋友們去打棒球或是踢足球。今天他不用去上班，所以吃完早餐後他將要去打棒球。

二、克漏字選擇

Everyone in my family 1 busy from Monday to Saturday. My dad gets up the 2 and works very 3 all day ; my mom 4 does housework and prepares our meals. My brother and I are 5 with our homework and club activities (社團活動) . However (然而) , we still have our family time every Sunday. We usually go to the park to have a picnic (野餐) or play sports. When the weather is bad, we 6 watch movies or play table games at home. We all love Sundays!

- () 1. (A) be (B) are (C) is (D) were
- () 2. (A) early (B) earliest
(C) more early (D) earlier
- () 3. (A) hard (B) hardly (C) lazy (D) lazier
- () 4. (A) busily always (B) busy always
(C) is busily (D) always busily
- () 5. (A) busy (B) busily (C) busily (D) most busily
- () 6. (A) comfortable (B) comfortably
(C) happily (D) happy

三、閱讀測驗

Kelly has to do a science report (報告) with her group members (組員們) this Friday, and they must finish it on that day. But, her group has a problem now: Eddie never does anything in the group. Every time they want to talk about the report with him, he always says, "Don't worry. I will do it later." But he never does his job! Thus (因此), someone in their group has to do his job for him. What's worse (更糟的是), Eddie always tells others, "My members don't work hard enough. I have to do so many things for them." Kelly is really angry with Eddie about **this**.

- () 1. When must Kelly's group finish the science report?
 (A) This Monday. (B) Next Friday.
 (C) Next Thursday. (D) This Friday.
- () 2. At the end of this reading, what does "this" mean?
 (A) Being late for group meetings (小組會議).
 (B) Saying something bad about the group.
 (C) Doing things for the other groups.
 (D) Talking on his phone during group meetings.
- () 3. Which is true?
 (A) Kelly and Eddie are in the same group.
 (B) Eddie doesn't have to do the science report.
 (C) Kelly will finish the report by herself (靠自己; 獨自).
 (D) Eddie works harder than others.



II-4

動名詞與不定詞及虛主詞It

學習目標

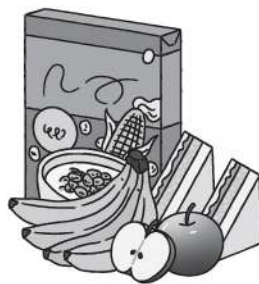
- ① 學會動名詞與不定詞的用法及句型
- ② 知道虛主詞 It 的用法以及句型



閱讀特快車

Eating Breakfast is Important

Breakfast is very important for junior high school students. It helps to improve (改善) your memory (記憶) and focus (專注) on study better. It helps to grow (成長) your body well, too. Many kinds of foods are right for breakfast. They are fruits, vegetables, bread, eggs, milk and cheese etc. It's smart to have quick and delicious foods to go like bananas, eggs and sandwiches. When you ^①wake up too late and hurry to school, you still have breakfast in your hand. In this case (情況), you could have different healthy breakfast every day. However (然而), some students don't eat breakfast because they want to ^②go on a diet. It's not good for you to eat nothing in the morning, and you will eat more during the day. Eating enough good foods for breakfast will also help to ^③lose weight and ^④keep in shape. Don't forget to eat breakfast every day!



文章說明

- ① wake up : 醒來 (片語)
- ② go on a diet : 控制飲食 ; 節食 (片語)
- ③ lose weight : 減肥 (片語)
- ④ keep in shape : 保持身形 (片語)



文法報報

Topic 1 動名詞與不定詞

相信大家都知道，一個英文句子如果有二個動詞，這二個動詞不能緊接在一起，要讓它們變得不一樣或是想辦法將它們分開才可以。將它們變得不一樣的方法就是把第二個動詞變成**動名詞 (V-ing)**，而將它們分開的方法就是運用**不定詞 (to + 原形動詞)**。那麼，動名詞與不定詞是如何形成的，又各有什麼用途呢？讓我們一起看看以下的說明。

一、動名詞的形成與用途

要把動詞變成動名詞，只要在原形動詞後面加 **ing** 就可以。因此動名詞與現在分詞的樣貌是相同的，都是 **V-ing** 喔。但是，動詞加上 **ing** 之後，它就不是動詞，而是名詞了。現在就一起來看看動名詞有哪些用途吧！

1. 當句子的**主詞**，視為**單數**，所以後面接用**單數動詞**。

例 1： **Seeing** a movie is my hobby. (看電影是我的嗜好。)

例 2： **Playing** a computer game is fun. (玩電腦遊戲很有趣。)

★ 註：上面二個例句的主詞分別為 **Seeing** 和 **Playing**，視為單數，所以後面接用單數動詞 **is**。

2. 當介系詞的**受詞**。

例 1： He is afraid of riding a bike. (他害怕騎腳踏車。)

例 2： How about going to the party with me? (跟我一起去派對如何?)

★ 註：上面二個例句分別有 **of** 和 **about** 這二個介系詞，所以後面的動詞要變成 **riding** 以及 **going**。

3. 當某些一般動詞的**受詞**。


例 1： Jack didn't finish doing his homework yesterday.

(Jack 昨天沒有完成他的作業。)

例 2： I enjoy reading comic books. (我喜愛看漫畫書。)

★ 註1： **finish** 和 **enjoy** 這二個動詞後面有第二個動詞時，第二個動詞一定要轉換成動名詞。所以，如同上面例句，我們看到了 **doing** 和 **reading**。

★ 註2：除了 **finish** 和 **enjoy** 之外，以下這些常見動詞後面的第二個動詞也要變成動名詞：**keep**、**practice**、**mind**。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Reading books _____ my hobby (嗜好) .
(A) isn't (B) aren't (C) isn't being (D) don't
- () 2. Jack practiced _____ the flute.
(A) play (B) be play (C) playing (D) plays
- () 3. He is not afraid of _____ that girl.
(A) talks to (B) talk to (C) talked to (D) talking to

二、接用動名詞的片語及句型

在英文中，有些動詞片語以及形容詞片語後面如果有第二個動詞，第二個動詞一定要用動名詞。此外，有些句型中的動詞則要轉換成動名詞。現在就來看看是哪些片語跟句型吧！

1. 接用動名詞的動詞片語

有些動詞片語後面的第二個動詞要變成動名詞，這些片語中常見的有：

give up (放棄)、think about (考慮)、feel like (想要)、have fun (in) (玩得很開心)、have a good time (玩得很開心)、have trouble (in) (有……困擾)、cannot help (忍不住)

例 1：I feel like drinking a cup of coffee. (我想要喝一杯咖啡。)

例 2：That boy had fun (in) playing soccer. (那個男孩踢足球，玩得很開心。)

例 3：They cannot help crying. (他們忍不住哭了。)

★ 註：動詞片語 feel like、have fun (in) 和 cannot help 後面的動詞要用 V-ing，例如：上面例句中的 drinking、playing 以及 crying。

2. 接用動名詞的形容詞片語

有些形容詞片語後面的第二個動詞要變成動名詞，這些片語中常見的有：

be good at (擅長)、be sorry for (對…感到抱歉)、be tired of (厭倦)、be used to (現在習慣於……)

例 1：Jack is good at singing. (Jack 擅長唱歌。)

例 2：They were sorry for being late. (他們對遲到感到抱歉。)

例 3 : Paul is tired of seeing this movie. (Paul 厭倦看這部電影。)

★ 註：形容詞片語 be good at、be sorry for 和 be tired of 後面的動詞一定要用 V-ing，例如：上面例句中的 singing、being 以及 seeing。

3. 接用動名詞的句型

有些句型裡面的動詞得轉換成動名詞，這些句型中常見的有：

It is no use... (……沒有用)、What about...? (……如何?)、How about...? (……如何?)

例 1 : It is no use asking her for help. (請她幫忙沒有用。)

例 2 : What about seeing a movie with me? (跟我去看電影如何?)

例 3 : How about eating a cake? (吃蛋糕如何?)

★ 註：It is no use、What about 以及 How about 句型裡面的動詞得轉換成 V-ing，例如：上面例句中的 asking、seeing 以及 eating。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. I just think about _____ to a movie with Kelly.
(A) going (B) go (C) to go (D) to going
- () 2. She was sorry for _____ you so many questions.
(A) ask (B) asked (C) asking (D) to ask
- () 3. How about _____ that basket?
(A) to buy (B) buy (C) buys (D) buying
- () 4. It's no use _____ too much water.
(A) to drink (B) drinking (C) drink (D) to drinking

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我想要吃西瓜。(feel like...)

2. 買這件裙子如何?(What about...)

三、不定詞的形成與用途

不定詞的形成方式很簡單，只要在原形動詞前面加上 **to** 就可以囉，也就是說，「**不定詞 = to + 原形動詞**」。與動名詞一樣，不定詞也有它自己的用途，現在就一起來看看吧！

1. 當句子的主詞，視為**單數**，所以後面接用**單數動詞**。

例 1：To play a computer game is fun. (玩電腦遊戲很有趣。)

例 2：To eat healthy food is important for you.
(吃健康食物對你們來說很重要。)

★ 註：上面二個例句的主詞分別為 To play 和 To eat，視為單數，所以後面接用單數動詞 is。

2. 當某些一般動詞的**受詞**。

例 1：I want to go with her. (我想跟她去。)

例 2：They learned to play the violin last night. (他們昨晚學習拉小提琴。)

★ 註 1：want 和 learn 這二個動詞後面有第二個動詞時，第二個動詞一定要用不定詞。所以，如同上面例句，我們看到了 to go 和 to play。

★ 註 2：除了 want 和 learn 之外，以下這些常見動詞後面的第二個動詞也一定要用不定詞：mean、agree、decide (決定)。

3. 補充說明某些一般動詞後面的**受詞的狀態**。

例 1：They invited my sister to eat dinner with them last night.

(他們昨晚邀請我妹妹跟他們一起吃晚餐。)

例 2：Mark taught us to play tennis last year. (Mark 去年教我們打網球。)

★ 註 1：invite 和 teach 這二個動詞後面有第二個動詞時，第二個動詞一定要用不定詞。所以，如同上面例句，我們看到了 to eat 和 to play。

★ 註 2：invite 和 teach 這二個動詞後面會先接受詞，再接不定詞。而不定詞那一串文字用來補充說明受詞的狀態。如同上面 例 1，我們看到「to eat dinner with them」補充說明「my sister」的狀態；例 2 的「to play tennis」補充說明「us」。

★ 註 3：以下這些常見動詞的用法和 invite 以及 teach 一樣：tell、ask (要求、邀請)

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. _____ English is interesting.
 (A) To learn (B) Learn
 (C) To learning (D) Learned
- () 2. To speak English well _____ easy.
 (A) not (B) are not (C) isn't (D) be
- () 3. We decide _____ our aunt.
 (A) visit (B) to visit (C) visiting (D) be visit
- () 4. My mother often tells my brother _____ more vegetables.
 (A) eating (B) to eating (C) be eating (D) to eat

四、接用不定詞的句型

有些句型裡如果有第二個動詞，第二個動詞一定要用不定詞。現在就來看看是哪些句型吧！

1. too...to... (太……以致於不能……)

例 1 : Ken is too tired to go to the party. (Ken 太累以致於不能去派對。)

例 2 : I am too afraid to get into that dark room.
 (我太害怕以致於無法進去那個黑暗的房間。)

★ 註：上面二個例句就是 too...to...的句型，所以 to 後面要接原形動詞 go 和 get。

2. It takes (人) 時間 to... (花費時間來……)

例 1 : It will take more time to finish this task.
 (完成這項任務將花費較多時間。)

例 2 : It took two hours to prepare a big meal yesterday.
 (昨天準備大餐花費了 2 個小時的時間。)

例 3 : It takes Tom one hour to do his homework every day.
(做作業每天花費 Tom 1 小時的時間。)

例 4 : It took me two hours to practice the violin last night.
(昨晚練習小提琴花費我 2 小時的時間。)

★ 註 1 : take 在這兒當「花費」解釋，後面加上時間，表示不定詞帶出的那件事需要耗費多少時間。例如：例 1 裡的「to finish this task」要花費較多時間；例 2 裡的「to prepare a big meal」花費了 2 個小時。

★ 註 2 : 這種句型也可以加「人」喔，這時會把「人」放在 take 後面、時間前面。例如：例 3 裡的「It takes “Tom” one hour」、例 4 裡的「It took “me” two hours」。

3. 邀請 / 要求 / 告訴某人做某事

例 1 : They asked me to play tennis with them.
(他們邀請我跟他們一起打網球。)

例 2 : My mother told Mark to eat more. (我媽媽告訴 Mark 多吃一些。)

★ 註 : 上面二個例句就是「邀請 / 告訴某人做某事」的句型，所以句中我們可以看到 to play 和 to eat。

4. 動詞 + enough + 名詞 + 不定詞

例 1 : They don't have enough money to buy a cake.
(他們沒有足夠的錢買蛋糕。)

例 2 : Jack has enough food to eat. (Jack 有足夠的食物可吃。)

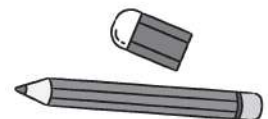
★ 註 : 上面例句就是「動詞 + enough + 名詞 + 不定詞」的句型，所以 enough money 和 enough food 後面接 to buy 和 to eat 喔。

5. 動詞 + 形容詞 / 副詞 + enough + 不定詞

例 1 : My sister is old enough to go to school.
(我妹妹年紀大到足以上學了。)

例 2 : He runs fast enough to catch rabbits. (他跑步快到足以抓住兔子。)

★ 註 : 上面例句就是「動詞 + 形容詞 / 副詞 + enough + 不定詞」的句型，因此 old enough 和 fast enough 後面接 to go 和 to catch 喔。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. This box is too heavy _____ .
 (A) to pick up (B) picking up
 (C) pick up (D) picked up
- () 2. It takes time _____ English.
 (A) learning (B) to learn
 (C) to learning (D) learn
- () 3. It took Tina one hour _____ a big meal last night.
 (A) ate (B) eating (C) eat (D) to eat
- () 4. Tina asked me _____ in the library with her.
 (A) studies (B) studying (C) to study (D) studied
- () 5. These boys have enough books _____ .
 (A) reading (B) to read
 (C) read (D) be reading
- () 6. They are rich (富有的) enough _____ two houses.
 (A) to buying (B) buy
 (C) buying (D) to buy



 文法補充站

〈 接用動名詞或不定詞有不同意思的動詞 〉

stop、remember 和 forget 這三個動詞後面接動名詞或不定詞的時候，含意會有所不同，我們一起來看看不同在哪裡吧！

1. stop

(1) stop + 動名詞：停止**做**……（停止、不再做某個動作）

例：He stopped smoking.（他停止抽菸。）

★ 註：上面例句表示他不再抽菸。

(2) stop + 不定詞：停下來**去做**……（停止原本的動作，改做另一動作）

例：He stopped to smoke.（他停下來抽菸。）

★ 註：上面例句表示他停止原本的動作後去抽菸。

2. remember

(1) remember + 動名詞：記得**已做**……（已做了某事，且記得已完成）

例：May remembers bringing books to school.（May 記得有帶書到學校。）

★ 註：上面例句表示 May 記得自己有帶書。

(2) remember + 不定詞：記得**去做**……（尚未做某事，但記得要去做）

例：May remembers to bring books to school.（May 記得要帶書到學校。）

★ 註：上面例句表示 May 記得要帶書。

3. forget

(1) forget + 動名詞：忘記**已做**……（已做某事，但卻忘記已經做完）

例：Mark forgot doing his homework.（Mark 忘記他已經做了作業。）

★ 註：上面例句表示 Mark 已做了作業，但是他忘記自己做完了。

(2) forget + 不定詞：忘記**去做**……（沒做某事，而且也忘了要做）

例：Mark forgot to do his homework.（Mark 忘記要做作業了。）


★ 註：上面例句表示 Mark 忘記且還沒做作業。

〈後面可以接動名詞或不定詞的動詞〉

like、love、hate、start 和 begin 這五個動詞後面可以接動名詞，也可以接不定詞。不論是接哪一個，意思一樣喔！

例 1：We like **jogging** in the morning. (我們喜歡在早上慢跑。)
= We like **to jog** in the morning.

例 2：When did he start **learning** English? (他什麼時候開始學英文？)
= When did he start **to learn** English?

 隨堂小練習

❖ 翻譯題

1. Ken 的爺爺忘記已經吃了晚餐。

2. 她們記得要拜訪她們的阿姨。

3. 你應該停下來喝一些水。

4. 你喜愛喝熱咖啡嗎？(用 love 造句)

5. 你昨天晚上什麼時候開始吃晚餐？(用 begin 造句)



文法得來速

❖ 動名詞用法

用法	說明	例 句
當主詞	視為單數名詞	<p>Seeing a movie is my hobby.</p> <p>★ 動名詞當主詞視為單數，故搭配單數動詞</p>
當受詞	放形容詞片語後	<p>He is afraid of riding a bike.</p> <p>● 同類片語</p> <p>be sorry for be good at</p> <p>be tired of be used to</p>
	放動詞片語後	<p>That boy had fun in playing soccer.</p> <p>● 同類片語</p> <p>think about feel like</p> <p>give up have trouble (in)</p> <p>have a good time can't help</p>
	放動詞後	<p>I enjoy reading comic books.</p> <p>● 同類動詞</p> <p>practice keep mind</p>

❖ 不定詞用法

用法	說明	例 句
當主詞	視為單數名詞	To eat healthy food is important for you. ★ 不定詞當主詞視為單數，故搭配單數動詞
當受詞	放動詞後	I want to go with her. ● 同類動詞 teach learn agree decide
當補語	在 ask 後	They asked me to play tennis with them. ★ 畫底線處修飾 me
	在 tell 後	My mother told Mark to eat more. ★ 畫底線處修飾 Mark
其他句型	too...to 後	Ken is too tired to go to the party.
	在 enough 後	They don't have enough money to buy a cake. 名詞
		My sister is old enough to go to school. 形容詞
		He runs fast enough to catch rabbits. 副詞

Topic 2 虛主詞 It

「it」這個代名詞可當句子裡的主詞，也可當受詞。然而，it還有另一種用法，也可以當「虛主詞」。既然是虛的，就表示 it不是真正的主詞，真主詞是句中的其他字詞。虛主詞 it可以替代動名詞 / 不定詞所代表的主詞，也可以放在一些句型中。一起來看看以下說明吧！

一、虛主詞 it與動名詞及不定詞的互換

動名詞和不定詞當主詞的句子，如果動名詞或不定詞太長的時候，可以用虛主詞 it開頭的句子來替換。接下來我們一起來看看如何轉換唷。

1. 動名詞當主詞

例 1：Playing computer games is interesting. (玩電腦遊戲很有趣。)

= It is interesting to play computer games.

虛主詞

真主詞

例 2：Speaking English well is easy. (說一口好英文很容易。)

= It is easy to speak English well.

虛主詞

真主詞

★ 註 1：動名詞當主詞的句子轉換成用虛主詞 it開頭的句子時，把真主詞移到後面。

★ 註 2：動名詞當主詞的句子轉換成用虛主詞 it開頭的句子時，在虛主詞 it的句中要改成不定詞。例如：上面例 1 的 playing computer games 變成 to play computer games；例 2 的 speaking English well 變成 to speak English well。

2. 不定詞當主詞

例 1：To play computer games is interesting. (玩電腦遊戲很有趣。)

= It is interesting to play computer games.

虛主詞

真主詞

例 2：To learn a new language is not easy. (學新語言不容易。)

= It is not easy to learn a new language.

虛主詞

真主詞

★ 註：不定詞當主詞的句子轉換成用虛主詞 it開頭的句子時，把真主詞（不定詞）移到後面。

二、習慣使用虛主詞的句型

描述「人格特質」與「事件特質」的形容詞，習慣上會用虛主詞 **It** 開頭來造句。我們來看以下說明喔！

1. 「人格特質」形容詞的句子

例 1：It is nice of you to help Jack. (你人真好，幫助 Jack。)

例 2：It is kind of Amy to teach me English. (Amy 人真好，教我英文。)

★ 註 1：描述人格特質的形容詞用來修飾「人」，如果句中要加入人，在人的前面要加 **of** 喔，就像上面二個句子裡的 **of you** 和 **of Amy**。

★ 註 2：描述人格特質的形容詞除了 **nice** 和 **kind**，比較常見的還有以下這些：**bad**、**smart**、**wise** (明智的)、**stupid** (愚笨的)、**polite** (有禮貌的)。

2. 「事件特質」形容詞的句子

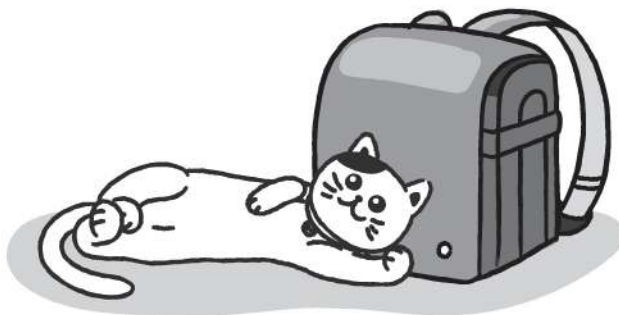
例 1：It is hard for Ben to ride a bike. (對 Ben 而言，騎腳踏車很艱難。)

例 2：It is important for me to pass the English quiz.

(對我而言，通過英語小考是重要的。)

★ 註 1：描述事件特質的形容詞用來修飾「事件」，如果句中要加入人，在人的前面要加 **for** 喔，就像上面二個句子裡的 **for Ben** 和 **for me**。

★ 註 2：描述事件特質的形容詞除了 **hard** 和 **important**，比較常見的還有以下這些：**easy**、**difficult**、**possible** (可能的)、**impossible** (不可能的)、**dangerous** (危險的)。





綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. We are tired of (厭倦) _____ the same movie over and over again (一再地) .
(A) to see (B) see (C) seeing (D) saw
- () 2. My parents decided _____ our old car and buy a new one.
(A) selling (B) to sell (C) sold (D) sell
- () 3. Does your sister often practice _____ the piano?
(A) playing (B) to play (C) plays (D) played
- () 4. Would you like _____ a cup of green tea?
(A) to have (B) having (C) have (D) to having
- () 5. The teacher asked us _____ this English novel yesterday.
(A) reading (B) read (C) to read (D) be reading
- () 6. Taking a hot bath at night _____ me relax (放鬆) .
(A) help (B) helps (C) to help (D) helping
- () 7. Rick likes Dora, but he is too shy _____ to her.
(A) talking (B) talks (C) to talk (D) talked
- () 8. For my brother, it is fun _____ comic books.
(A) reads (B) read (C) to reading (D) to read
- () 9. _____ a bicycle is difficult for my little brother.
(A) Rides (B) To ride (C) Ride (D) To riding
- () 10. Mike's dad didn't have enough time _____ his breakfast this morning.
(A) to eat (B) eating (C) eats (D) eat
- () 11. Gary forgot _____ his homework, so his teacher was angry at him.
(A) to did (B) doing (C) to do (D) do

- () 12. It is dangerous (危險的) _____ fast on a rainy day. You should slow down (慢下來) .
 (A) drive (B) driving (C) drove (D) to drive
- () 13. When it stops _____ , we can go to the park.
 (A) to rain (B) raining (C) rain (D) rains
- () 14. That dog is _____ fat _____ through the door.
 (A) too ; to go (B) so ; to go
 (C) too ; going (D) very ; going
- () 15. Grandma didn't remember _____ her medicine, so she took it again.
 (A) to take (B) took (C) takes (D) taking
- () 16. It is no use _____ to fix your old scooter. Just buy a new one.
 (A) trying (B) to try (C) tried (D) tries
- () 17. To sing in front of people _____ never easy.
 (A) be (B) are (C) is (D) being
- () 18. It took me about 20 minutes _____ a bike to the library.
 (A) riding (B) to ride (C) ride (D) rode
- () 19. Making cakes is very interesting.
 = It is very interesting _____ cakes.
 (A) make (B) making (C) for make (D) to make
- () 20. It is nice _____ my neighbor to give me these yummy apples.
 (A) in (B) on (C) of (D) for

二、句子重組

1. to take / stop / Let's / a rest.
-

2. questions / Answering / is / the teacher's / difficult.

3. for you / to eat / It is / good / more vegetables.

4. reading / favorite storybook. / kept / The girl / her

5. his homework / He forgot / to school. / to bring

三、翻譯題

1. I remember closing all the windows.

2. We plan to eat beef noodles for lunch today.

3. Sharon is too tired to clean the kitchen.

4. Watching soccer games is boring for my mom.

5. It is kind of you to make this birthday cake for me.



綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. The boys had a lot of fun _____ soccer this afternoon.
(A) played (B) playing (C) to play (D) play
- () 2. To read comic books _____ Jackson's hobby (嗜好).
(A) are (B) do (C) is (D) does
- () 3. It is kind of your uncle _____ us these nice books.
(A) sending (B) sends (C) sent (D) to send
- () 4. I'm so sorry. I don't mean _____ you.
(A) to hurt (B) hurting (C) hurted (D) hurt
- () 5. Playing dodge ball is fun. = It is fun _____ dodge ball.
(A) play (B) playing (C) to play (D) for playing
- () 6. _____ too much TV is not good for your eyes. You should stop _____ TV now.
(A) Watching ; to watch (B) Watching ; watching
(C) To watch ; to watch (D) Watch ; watching
- () 7. The horse is too old _____ the race.
(A) joins (B) to join (C) joining (D) join
- () 8. It takes my mom about one hour _____ dinner for my family.
(A) cooking (B) cook (C) to cook (D) cooked
- () 9. _____ to my favorite singer's songs makes me happy.
(A) Listening (B) Listen (C) Listened (D) To listening
- () 10. Did you see my cellphone? I remember _____ it on the table, but I can't find it now.
(A) to put (B) put (C) putted (D) putting
- () 11. Yolanda enjoys _____ pictures when she has free time.
(A) to draw (B) draws (C) drawing (D) draw

- () 12. It is wonderful _____ a cup of hot coffee in the early morning. = _____ a cup of hot coffee in the early morning is wonderful.
(A) to drink ; Drink (B) drinking ; To drink
(C) drink ; To drink (D) to drink ; Drinking
- () 13. Louis : I'm a little hungry now. Do you have any food?
Sally : What about _____ some cookies?
(A) to have (B) having (C) had (D) have
- () 14. Ted's dog was hungry yesterday because he forgot _____ it.
(A) fed (B) to feed (C) feeding (D) feed
- () 15. Getting good grades (成績) isn't easy _____ me.
(A) for (B) with (C) in (D) on
- () 16. Pete eats lots of snacks between meals, so he is often too full (飽的) _____ anything at mealtimes (吃飯時間) .
< 改編自 110 年會考題 >
(A) eats (B) eating (C) to eat (D) eat
- () 17. Terry always asks his mom _____ him something expensive on his birthday. < 改編自 108 年會考題 >
(A) buying (B) buys (C) be buying (D) to buy
- () 18. My parents have different hobbies (嗜好) . My dad enjoys _____ pictures ; my mom loves _____ books.
< 改編自 105 年會考題 >
(A) take ; to read (B) taking ; read
(C) takes ; reads (D) taking ; reading
- () 19. It _____ the police three days _____ the missing (失蹤的) child. < 改編自 107 年會考題 >
(A) took ; to find (B) spent ; finding
(C) cost ; to find (D) paid ; found

() 20. Irene has trouble in (有……困擾) _____ maps. She can't find her way even when she has a map in her hand.

< 改編自 103 年會考題 >

- (A) to read (B) reading (C) reads (D) read

二、填空

1. Do you mind _____ (wait) here for a minute?
2. The cake was yummy! I couldn't help (忍不住) _____ (eat) it all.
3. The student's grade (成績) is good enough _____ (enter 進入) that school.
4. William invited us _____ (go) to a movie with him.
5. Having a house party this weekend _____ (be) a good idea.
6. I'm so sorry for _____ (break) the bowl. I will buy a new one for you.
7. Michael is 15 years old. He's too young _____ (drive) a car.
8. It's lunchtime (午餐時間). Let's stop _____ (have) lunch.
9. My uncle is thinking about (考慮) _____ (build) his own house.
10. Katherine told me _____ (stay) at her place last night.

三、翻譯題

1. We have enough food to share with those people.
-

2. The kids had fun drawing pictures in that class.

3. It takes me an hour to finish my homework every day.

4. 他們今晚想要 (feel like) 吃披薩和漢堡。

5. 我太胖了以致於穿不下這件洋裝。

四、閱讀測驗

Amanda : Good afternoon, Vivian. Where are you going?

Vivian : I'm going to pick my boys up (接……) at the gym.

Amanda : Hum. Your kids seem (似乎) to go to the gym very often lately (最近).

Vivian : Well, that's because they have to practice for the basketball games next month. Their team wants to be the champion (冠軍) this year.

Amanda : Oh, I see. Good luck to your sons' team!

Vivian : Thank you. See you later!

() 1. Where are Vivian's sons?

(A) At the bus stop.

(B) At the gym.

(C) At a restaurant.

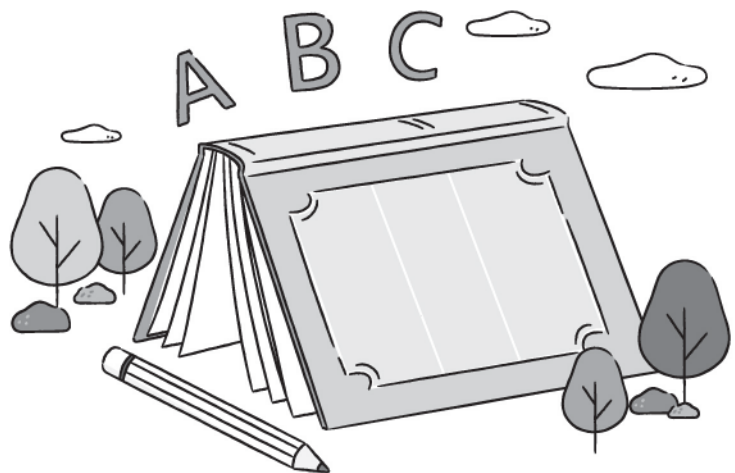
() 2. What sport do Vivian's sons play?

(A) Basketball.

(B) Baseball.

(C) Tennis.

- () 3. Which is true?
- (A) Vivian has only one son.
 - (B) Vivian is going to the gym now.
 - (C) There is a baseball game this evening.





綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空（依中文提示作答）

1. A : Does Greg play basketball well?

B : No, he doesn't.

He _____ .

（不擅長打籃球）

2. A : Did you bring any eggs home?

B : Ah, sorry!

I _____ for you.

（忘了買蛋）

3. A : Did you see that?! That white car almost（幾乎；差一點）hit the boy!

B : I know! The kid shouldn't play soccer on the street.

A : You're right. It is dangerous（危險的）for the boy

_____ .

（在街道上踢足球）

4. A : Why don't you drink your tea? Do you not like it?

B : No, I didn't drink it because

_____ .

（它太燙了以致於無法喝）

5. A : Do you often go camping with your friends?

B : Yes, I do.

_____ fun.

（和他們一起去露營）

二、翻譯題

1. 他們昨天打棒球打得很開心。（請用“have a good time...”作答）

2. 我現在習慣 (be used to) 每天早上喝一杯熱牛奶了。

3. 他邀請了 Alice 跟他一起吃晚餐。

4. 每天喝足夠的水很重要。(請用不定詞開頭)

5. 今天早上打掃客廳花了我兩個小時的時間。(請用虛主詞 it 開頭)

6. 她太虛弱了以致於無法開車去醫院。

7. 現在很晚了。你應該停止看電視了。

8. 我哥哥強壯到足以搬運一台大冰箱。

9. 晚餐後跟我們一起去看電影如何？(請用 “How about...” 的句型)

10. 那個年輕人真壞，踢這隻可憐的小狗。(請用 “It is...” 的句型)



~背面尚有試題，請翻頁繼續作答~

2. 短文選擇

- () (1) According to Jay, how is the weather these days?
 (A) It is getting colder. (B) It is getting hotter.
 (C) It is very warm. (D) It is wet and windy.
- () (2) What did Anna buy yesterday?
 (A) Juice. (B) Fruit.
 (C) Ice cream. (D) A fan.
- () (3) What did Jay forget to buy when going to the supermarket?
 (A) A fan. (B) Juice.
 (C) A refrigerator. (D) Ice cream.





綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

Billy 愛聽音樂，而且他很擅長唱歌。他計畫要參加下個月的歌唱比賽 (singing contest)，而贏得第一名 (first place) 是他的目標 (goal)。這個星期期間，練習唱歌每天都花 Billy 大約三個小時。他有點累，但仍然很努力地練習。

二、克漏字選擇

Dear Jeff,

I'm very sorry for 1 you only a birthday card at your birthday party last night. To be honest (事實上), I planned 2 a birthday cake for you yesterday, but I was 3 busy 3 a cake before your party. As you know (如你所知), I am good 4 cakes. So, I'm going 5 your favorite flavor (口味) of cake to compensate (補償) you. I will 6 it to your place tonight. See you then!

Warm wishes,
Anita

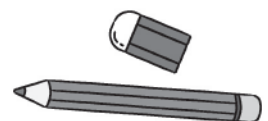
- () 1. (A) gave (B) give (C) to give (D) giving

- () 2. (A) make (B) making (C) to making (D) to make
- () 3. (A) too ; made (B) very ; make
(C) too ; to make (D) so ; for make
- () 4. (A) at making (B) to make (C) for make (D) in making
- () 5. (A) making (B) make (C) made (D) to make
- () 6. (A) to bring (B) bring (C) brought (D) bringing

三、閱讀測驗

My parents took my sister and me to the Taipei Zoo last weekend. My sister and I were very excited (興奮的) because it was our first time going to a zoo. We saw many animals in the zoo : lions, tigers, koalas, zebras, and many other creatures (生物) . My sister loved those koalas ; they were the cutest in her eyes. My favorite animals were the tigers and lions. They were cool and powerful (強而有力的) , so I asked my father to take lots of photos of them. My sister and I even got a chance (機會) to feed the goats and rabbits! It was so fun and we really had a wonderful time visiting the zoo. Hopefully (但願) , we will visit the Taipei Zoo again soon!

- () 1. Who did the writer go to the Taipei Zoo with last weekend?
(A) His classmates. (B) His friends.
(C) His family. (D) His neighbor.
- () 2. What animal did the writer's sister love the most?
(A) Lions. (B) Tigers.
(C) Zebras. (D) Koalas.
- () 3. Which is **not true** about this reading?
(A) The writer loved powerful tigers and lions.
(B) The writer fed goats and rabbits at the zoo.
(C) The writer's father took many photos at the zoo.
(D) The writer and his sister often visit the Taipei Zoo.



II-5

使役與授予動詞及易混淆動詞

學習目標

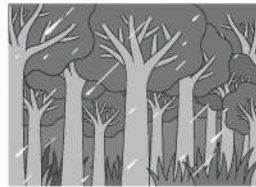
- ① 學會使役與授予動詞 give 與 buy 的用法
- ② 能分辨 spend / cost / take 的異同和用法



閱讀特快車

My Stupid Story

My mom ^①ran out of butter last night. She had me buy some butter at the grocery store. ^②On my way to the store, I would first arrive at a park. Usually, I wouldn't ^③cut across the park at night, but it would take more time to walk around the park. It was so dark and raining so hard, so I decided to walk into it. Then I saw a man under a tree. People with a clear mind would turn back and go away. But me? No, I went past him quickly.



When I was passing (經過) the man, he raised (舉；抬) his head and gave me a strange smile. I was scared (害怕) ; I started running. "Hey! Wait!" the man shouted from behind. He was running after me! I was too scared to stop, so I ran even faster. I couldn't see the road clearly ^④because of the heavy rain. Then, I ^⑤ran into something. *It was the man!* "Don't hurt me!" I cried. "Don't worry. I am trying to give back your key! You dropped it under the tree." the man said. I felt too embarrassed (尷尬) to say anything and just took back the key from the man.

(改寫自110年國中會考題文章)

文章說明

- ① run out of : 用完 (片語)
- ② on my way to : 在前往...的路上
- ③ cut across : 跨越 (抄捷徑)
- ④ because of : 因為 (片語) ; 該片語後面會加上名詞。
- ⑤ run into : 撞上 ; 遇到 (片語)



文法報報

Topic 1 使役動詞與授予動詞

「我爸媽**要我**去洗碗」、「我爸媽在我生日時**給我**一輛腳踏車」，日常生活中偶而會聽到這樣的語句。在英文裡，像第一句這種帶有命令意味的句子就是「使役動詞」的句子，而第二句表達給予的句子就是「授予動詞」的句子。那麼，使役動詞有哪些，授予動詞又有哪些呢？用法又是如何？我們一起來看以下說明吧！

一、使役動詞的用法

使役動詞的中文意思是「使、叫、要、讓」，用來命令、要求或容許他人做某事。常見的使役動詞有 **make**、**have**、**let**，現在就一起來看看它們的用法！

1. **make** 意思是「迫使 / 要某人做某事」。

例 1：Annie often **makes** her son clean his room.
(Annie 常常要她兒子整理他的房間。)

例 2：The teacher **made** the boy wash his hands. (老師要這個男孩洗手。)

★ 註：make 後面要先接「人」，再接「原形動詞」喔。例如：例 1 中的「**makes her son clean**」以及例 2 中的「**made the boy wash**」。

2. **have** 意思是「使喚 / 安排某人做某事」。

例 1：Mark **has** Ben show me my room.
(Mark 叫 Ben 帶我去看我的房間。)

例 2：My parents always **have** me do my homework before I watch TV.
(我的父母親總是叫我看電視之前先做作業。)

★ 註：have 後面先接「人」，再接「原形動詞」喔。例如：例 1 中的「**has Ben show**」以及例 2 中的「**have me do**」。

make 與 have 都在強迫或要求人家做事，而 let 則不具強制性。




3. **let** 意思是「讓 / 允許某人做某事」。

例 1：Jack sometimes **lets** me use his car. (Jack 有時讓我用他的車。)

例 2：My father didn't **let** my brother buy a camera last week.
(我爸爸上星期不讓我哥哥買相機。)

★ 註：同 make 和 have，let 後面也是先接「人」，再接「原形動詞」。例如：例 1 中的「**lets me use**」以及例 2 中的「**let my brother buy**」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Amy made her son _____ his long hair.
(A) cut (B) to cut (C) cutting (D) cuts
- () 2. Helen had Jack _____ the chair.
(A) fixing (B) fix (C) to fix (D) fixes
- () 3. Her parents don't let her _____ a motorcycle.
(A) to ride (B) riding (C) rides (D) ride

二、授與動詞 give 和 buy 的用法

give 和 buy 都是授與動詞，授與動詞就是給他人事物，所以動詞後面會有「人」和「物」。其中「人」是間接受詞，「物」是直接受詞。現在就來看看 give 和 buy 的用法吧！

1. give

例 1 : Nancy will **give her sister a skirt**. (Nancy 將給她妹妹一件裙子。)

人(間接受詞) 物(直接受詞)

= Nancy will **give a skirt to her sister**.

物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)

例 2 : Nancy **gives three skirts to her sister** every year.

物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)

(Nancy 每年給她妹妹三件裙子。)

= Nancy **gives her sister three skirts** every year.

人(間接受詞) 物(直接受詞)

★ 註 1 : give 後面如果先接「人」，後面會緊跟著接「物」。例如：例 1 中的「**give her sister a skirt**」以及例 2 中的「**gives her sister three skirts**」。

★ 註 2 : give 後面如果先接「物」，後面要先加 **to**，之後再接「人」。例如：例 1 中的「**give a skirt to her sister**」以及例 2 中的「**gives three skirts to her sister**」。

例 3 : Nancy will **give it to her sister**. (Nancy 將把它給她妹妹。)
物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)

例 4 : Nancy **gives them to her sister** every year.
物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)
 (Nancy 每年把它們給她妹妹。)

★註 : give 後面的「物」如果是用「代名詞」來表示，就只能緊接在 give 後面，之後再接「to + 人」喔。例如：例 3 中的「**give it to her sister**」以及例 4 中的「**gives them to her sister**」。

2. buy

例 1 : Nancy will **buy her parents some snacks**.
人(間接受詞) 物(直接受詞)
 (Nancy 將買一些點心給她父母親。)

= Nancy will **buy some snacks for her parents**.
物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)

例 2 : Nancy **bought a snack for her parents** last week.
物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)
 (上星期 Nancy 買一份點心給她父母親。)

= Nancy **bought her parents a snack** last week.
人(間接受詞) 物(直接受詞)

★註 1 : buy 後面如果先接「人」，後面會緊跟著接「物」。例如：例 1 中的「**buy her parents some snacks**」以及例 2 中的「**bought her parents a snack**」。

★註 2 : buy 後面如果先接「物」，後面要先加 **for**，之後再接「人」。例如：例 1 中的「**buy some snacks for her parents**」以及例 2 中的「**bought a snack for her parents**」。

例 3 : Nancy will **buy them for her parents**. (Nancy 將買它們給她父母親。)
物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)

例 4 : Nancy **bought it for her parents** last week.
物(直接受詞) 人(間接受詞)
 (上星期 Nancy 買了它給她父母親。)

★註 : buy 後面的「物」如果是用「代名詞」來表示，就只能緊接在 buy 後面，之後再接「for + 人」喔。例如：例 3 中的「**buy them for her parents**」以及例 4 中的「**bought it for her parents**」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Ken gave some apples _____ me yesterday.
 (A) for (B) to (C) on (D) ×
- () 2. Cathy bought me _____ some lemons last week.
 (A) for (B) to (C) at (D) ×
- () 3. We will give Tom _____ a birthday gift.
 (A) on (B) to (C) × (D) for
- () 4. They will buy some guavas _____ you.
 (A) to (B) for (C) × (D) on
- () 5. We will give _____ .
 (A) Tom it (B) Tom to it (C) it Tom (D) it to Tom
- () 6. They will buy _____ .
 (A) it you (B) you it (C) it for you (D) it to you

 文法得來速

❖ 使役動詞：以下動詞皆有用來命令、要求或容許他人做某事的意味。

使役動詞	語氣	例 句
make	強迫	The teacher made the boy wash his hands. 原形 V
have	有些許強迫	Mark has Ben show me my room. 原形 V
let	允許	Jack sometimes lets me use his car. 原形 V

- 註：1. **make** 有迫使的意思，意味著強迫對方只做某事情，別無選擇。
 2. **have** 類似 **make** 的語氣，但程度上沒有那麼強迫。
 3. **let** 不具強制性，語氣最和緩。

❖ 授予動詞：以下動詞有給予的意味。

give	
句型 1	Nancy gives <u>her sister</u> <u>three skirts</u> every year. 人 物
句型 2	Nancy gives <u>three skirts</u> to <u>her sister</u> every year. 物 人
	Nancy gives <u>them</u> to <u>her sister</u> every year. 物 人

buy	
句型 1	Nancy will buy <u>her parents</u> <u>some snacks</u> . 人 物
句型 2	Nancy will buy <u>some cookies</u> for <u>her parents</u> . 物 人
	Nancy will buy <u>them</u> for <u>her parents</u> . 物 人

備註：

1. 若 **give** 後先接「物」，則後面加 **to**，之後再接「人」。 **to** 有強調方向性的意味。
2. 若 **buy** 後先接「物」，則後面加 **for**，之後再接「人」。 **for** 有強調目的性的意味。
3. 「物」若為「代名詞」，就只能緊接在 **give** 或 **buy** 後面、介系詞前面。

Topic 2 spend / cost / take 的用法及比較

spend、cost 及 take 的中文都是「花費……」的意思，但在英文的語法裡，這幾個字的用法不同，讓我們一起看看以下的說明吧！

一、spend

要表示「人」花費多少「金錢或時間」在事物或活動上，就會用 **spend** 這個字喔。

例 1：Jane **spent much money** buying that house. (Jane 花很多錢買那棟房子。)

例 2 : Ben **spent one thousand dollars on that lamp.**

(Ben 花了 1000 元買了那盞檯燈。)

★ 註 1 : **spend** 可用來表達「人」花費多少「錢」在事物上，以「人」當主詞。

★ 註 2 : **spend** 後面如果還有另一個動詞，這個動詞要用 **V-ing** 的形式。例如：

例 1 的「**spent much money buying that house**」。

★ 註 3 : 如果是表達「人」花費多少「錢」在某件東西上，則用「**on + 物品**」。

例如：例 2 的「**spent one thousand dollars on that lamp**」。

例 3 : Jane **spends two hours watching TV** every day.

(Jane 每天花 2 小時看電視。)

例 4 : Ben **spent all day on his homework** yesterday.

(Ben 昨天花整天的時間在作業上。)

★ 註 : **spend** 也可用來表達「人」花費多少「時間」在事物上，同樣以「人」當主詞。後面有另一個動詞時，這個動詞要用 **V-ing**，例如：例 3 的「**spends two hours watching TV**」。也可以用「**on + 事物**」表示在某件事物上花費多少時間，例如：例 4 的「**spent all day on his homework**」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. I spend a lot of time _____ my homework every day.
(A) to do (B) do (C) doing (D) to doing

() 2. May spent two thousand dollars _____ these cards.
(A) in (B) on (C) to (D) ×

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我兒子每天花很多時間彈吉他。

2. 我花了 300 元買這些盤子。(用 **on...** 造句)

二、cost

要表達「某事物價值或花費（人）多少錢」，會用 **cost** 這個字喔。

例 1：These guavas **cost one hundred dollars.**（這些芭樂價值 100 元。）

例 2：This bike **cost my brother ten thousand dollars.**

（這輛腳踏車花了我哥哥 1 萬元。）

★ 註 1：cost 表達「事物」價值或花費多少「錢」，以「事物」當主詞。

★ 註 2：要特別強調花費「人」多少錢的時候，可以在 cost 後面加上人。例如：

例 2 的「**cost my brother ten thousand dollars**」。

例 3：It **cost my brother ten thousand dollars to buy this bike.**

（買這輛腳踏車花了我哥哥 10000 元。）

例 4：It **cost her five thousand dollars to buy this flute.**

（買這支長笛花了她 5000 元。）

★ 註：我們也可以用「虛主詞 it + cost + 人 + 不定詞……」來表示事物花費人多少錢。例如：例 3 的「**It cost my brother...to buy this bike.**」以及例 4 的「**It cost her...to buy this flute.**」。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. Those books _____ my father two thousand dollars.
(A) spend (B) spends (C) cost (D) costs

() 2. It _____ me one hundred dollars _____ this frisbee.
(A) cost ; buying (B) cost ; to buy
(C) spend ; to buy (D) spends ; to buy

❖ 翻譯題

1. 這顆大西瓜價值 200 元。

2. 買這件毛衣花了我 3000 元。

三、take

要表達「做某事物需要花費（人）多少時間」，我們會用 **take** 這個字唷。

例 1：It **takes** Paul **one hour** to do his homework every day.

（做作業每天花費 Paul 1 小時的時間。）

例 2：It will **take more time** to prepare a big meal.（準備大餐將花費較多時間。）

★ 註：take 後面加上時間，表示做一件事耗費多少時間。例如：例 1 裡的「to do his homework」花費 1 小時的時間；例 2 裡的「to prepare a big meal」要花費較多時間。

例 3：To recreate a forest **takes longer time** than building a garden.

（重造一座森林比建造一個花園還費時。）

例 4：Watching TV **takes** Jane **two hours** every day.

（看電視每天花 Jane 2 小時的時間。）

★ 註 1：表達「做某事物需要花費（人）多少時間」，除了用「虛主詞 it + takes + ... + 不定詞」的句型（如上面的例 1 和例 2），也可以運用「不定詞 / 動名詞 + takes + ...」的句型（如上面的例 3 和例 4）。

★ 註 2：要特別強調花費「人」多少時間的時候，可以在 take 後面加上人。例如：例 4 的「takes Jane two hours」。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. It took Ken a lot of time _____ tennis last week.
(A) playing (B) play (C) to play (D) to playing
- () 2. Playing baseball _____ us three hours every day.
(A) spends (B) takes (C) costs (D) took

❖ 翻譯題

1. 彈吉他每天花我兒子很多時間。（用不定詞開頭來造句）

2. 昨天吃晚餐花了我 30 分鐘。（用虛主詞 it 開頭來造句）

 文法補充站

〈 spend / cost / take 與 How much...? / How long...? 的搭配 〉

問「多少金錢或時間」會用「How much...?」，而問「多少時間」會用「How long...?」。這二個疑問句型會跟 spend / cost / take 搭配，以詢問某人或某事物花了多少錢或時間。接下來我們就一起來看看它們的配搭和用法吧！

一、spend 與 How much...? / How long...? 的搭配

spend 和 How much 搭配可詢問人花費了多少錢或時間，spend 和 How long 搭配可詢問人花費了多少時間喔。

例 1：How much (money) does Joe spend buying that car?
(Joe 花多少錢買那輛車?)

★ 註 1：How much 後面的 money，可以省略不寫。

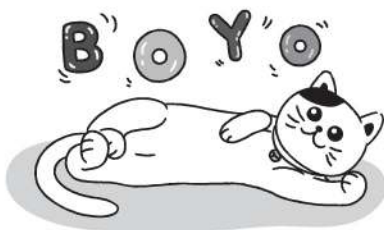
★ 註 2：我們可以用「How much + (money) + ... + 人 + spend...?」來詢問人花費多少錢在一件事物上。如例 1 裡的「How much (money) does Joe spend...?」。

例 2：How much time did Joe spend on his homework yesterday? (昨天 Joe 花多少時間在作業上?)

= How long did Joe spend on his homework yesterday?
(昨天 Joe 花多少時間在作業上?)

★ 註 1：我們可以用「How much + time + ... + 人 + spend...?」來詢問人花費多少時間在一件事物上，如例 2 裡的「How much time did Joe spend...?」。

★ 註 2：我們也可以用「How long + ... + 人 + spend...?」來詢問人花費多少時間在一件事物上，如例 2 裡的「How long did Joe spend...?」。



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. A : _____ did Ken spend on these roses?
B : He spent 2000 dollars.
(A) How much time (B) How long money
(C) How many money (D) How much money
- () 2. A : _____ do Ken and Paul spend watching TV every day?
B : They spend two hours on TV every day.
(A) How long time (B) How much time
(C) How much money (D) How many time
- () 3. A : _____ did Ken and Paul spend on music last night?
B : They spend three hours on it last night.
(A) How long (B) How long time
(C) How much money (D) How many time

❖ 翻譯題

1. 去年你花了多少錢買那把吉他？

2. 你們昨天晚上花了多少時間吃晚餐？（用 how long... 造句）

3. 這些男孩昨天下午花了多少時間洗澡？（用 how much... 造句）



二、cost 與 How much...? 的搭配

cost 會和 How much 搭配，詢問某物品價值多少錢，或某物品花費了人多少錢喔。

例 1：How much (money) do these lettuces cost? (這些萵苣價值多少錢?)

★ 註：我們可以用「How much + (money) + ... + 物品 + cost?」來詢問物品價值多少錢。如例 1 的「How much (money) do **these lettuces** cost?」。

例 2：How much (money) do these lettuces cost **us**?
(這些萵苣花了我們多少錢?)

★ 註：要詢問物品花了「人」多少錢，可以在 cost 後面加上人，如例 2 的「How much (money) do these lettuces cost **us**?」。

例 3：How much (money) does it cost them to buy these lettuces?
(買這些萵苣花了他們多少錢?)

例 4：How much (money) does it cost you to buy this ring?
(買這個戒指花了你多少錢?)

★ 註：如果要詢問做某件事花了「人」多少錢，可以運用「虛主詞 it + cost + 人 + 不定詞」，如例 3 的「How much (money) does **it cost them to buy these lettuces**?」以及例 4 的「How much (money) does **it cost you to buy this ring**?」。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. A : How much does this bike _____ ?
B : It costs five thousand dollars.
(A) cost (B) costing (C) costed (D) be cost
- () 2. A : _____ does this jacket cost him?
B : It costs him two thousand dollars.
(A) How many (B) How
(C) How much (D) How money
- () 3. A : How much did _____ cost her _____ a big meal?
B : It cost her one thousand dollars.
(A) it : eating (B) it : to eat
(C) × : to eat (D) × : eating

❖ 翻譯題

1. 這把吉他價值多少錢？

2. 買電影票花了他們多少錢？（用虛主詞 it 來造句）

三、take 與 How long...? 的搭配

take 與 How long 搭配時，可用來詢問做某事件花費了多少時間。

例 1 : **How long does this test take?** (這個測驗時間有多長?)

例 2 : **How long did that difficult task take?** (那個困難的任務耗時多久?)



★ 註：我們可以用「How long + ... + 事件 + take?」來詢問某事件花費多少時間。

例如：例 1 的「**How long does this test take?**」，例 2 的「**How long did that difficult task take?**」。

文法得來速

❖ spend、cost、take

動詞	例 句
spend	Jane spent <u>much money</u> buying that house. 錢 Ving
	Ben spent <u>one thousand dollars</u> on <u>that lamp</u> . 錢 事物
	Ben spent <u>all day</u> on <u>computer games</u> yesterday. 時間 事物
備註：spend 表示「人」花費多少「金錢」或「時間」在事物或活動上，主詞需為「人」。	

動詞	例 句
cost 	These guavas cost <u>one hundred dollars</u> . 事物 錢
	This bike cost <u>my brother</u> <u>ten thousand dollars</u> . 事物 人 錢
	It cost <u>my brother</u> <u>ten thousand dollars</u> to buy this bike. 人 錢 不定詞
take 	To recreate a forest takes <u>longer time</u> than building a garden. 時間
	Watching TV takes <u>Jane</u> <u>two hours</u> every day. 人 時間
	<u>It</u> takes <u>Paul</u> <u>one hour</u> to do his homework every day. 人 時間 不定詞

- 備註：1. **cost** 表達「事物」價值或花費多少「錢」，以「事物」當主詞。
 2. **take** 表達「事物」花多少「時間」去做，以「事物」當主詞。
 3. 強調花費「人」多少錢時，可以在 **cost** 後面加上人。
 4. 強調花費「人」多少時間時，可以在 **take** 後面加上人。
 5. **cost** 和 **take** 可用 **it** 當虛主詞，後面的動作則用不定詞。



綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. Jessica often has her brother _____ their pet dog.
 (A) washes (B) to wash (C) wash (D) washing
- () 2. My mother made me _____ the floor yesterday.
 (A) to mop (B) mop (C) mopping (D) mopped
- () 3. Anthony will buy a toy car _____ his son tomorrow.
 (A) to (B) for (C) on (D) in
- () 4. I spent two hours _____ the book this morning.
 (A) read (B) to read (C) on read (D) reading
- () 5. It _____ Tiffany about one thousand dollars to buy the hat.
 (A) cost (B) took (C) spent (D) had
- () 6. Doing homework usually _____ me one hour every day.
 (A) takes (B) costs (C) spends (D) makes
- () 7. Mrs. Lee doesn't let her child _____ snacks before dinner.
 (A) to eat (B) eating (C) eat (D) eats
- () 8. A : _____ do you spend on comic books every weekend?
 B : More than five hours.
 (A) How old (B) How long
 (C) How many (D) How much
- () 9. We love Aunt Lucy because she always gives presents
 _____ us every Christmas.
 (A) for (B) on (C) × (D) to
- () 10. It will _____ them half an hour to walk to the night market.
 (A) spend (B) cost (C) take (D) make
- () 11. Hank didn't do his homework, so his teacher made him
 _____ it in class.
 (A) finish (B) finished (C) to finish (D) finishing

- () 12. A : How much did this umbrella _____ you?
 B : 200 NT dollars.
 (A) take (B) cost (C) spend (D) let
- () 13. The boy gives his mother _____ a kiss before going to bed.
 (A) × (B) to (C) for (D) by
- () 14. How much money do you spend _____ your breakfast every day?
 (A) to buy (B) in (C) buying (D) to
- () 15. Mom, I like that pink skirt. Could you buy _____ ?
 (A) it me (B) me it (C) it for me (D) it to me
- () 16. A : _____ did it take Bella to make the cake?
 B : It took her forty minutes to make the cake.
 (A) How much (B) How many time
 (C) How long (D) How long time
- () 17. Please wait a minute. I'll finish using the marker and give _____ .
 (A) you it (B) it to you (C) it you (D) it on you
- () 18. _____ did Pete spend on his math homework?
 = How long did Pete spend _____ his math homework?
 (A) How many time ; to do (B) How much time ; to do
 (C) How much time ; doing (D) How many time ; doing
- () 19. How much did it cost you _____ that car?
 = How much did you _____ on that car?
 (A) to buy ; spend (B) buying ; take
 (C) buy ; spend (D) buying ; cost
- () 20. How long does Dad spend _____ to work every day?
 = How long does it _____ Dad to drive to work every day?
 (A) driving ; cost (B) to drive ; take
 (C) to drive ; spend (D) driving ; take

二、句子重組

1. to / gave / The old man / his watch / me.

2. read one book / has / Ms. White / her students / every week.

3. the pizza / How much money / cost / does / you?

4. three days / the picture. / spent / Denny / drawing

5. takes / much time. / the big house / To clean / us

三、翻譯題

1. I sometimes let my sister wear my clothes.

2. This blanket costs more than five thousand dollars.

3. How long do you spend on computer games every day?

4. It took the man many years to become a famous actor.

5. Ted's parents make him eat vegetables and fruit every day.



綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. The teacher has her students _____ English in class.
(A) speaking (B) spoke (C) to speak (D) speak
- () 2. Can you give me _____ that ruler? I need to use it now.
(A) for (B) to (C) × (D) on
- () 3. Jennifer spends a lot of money _____ new clothes every season.
(A) buying (B) to buy (C) buys (D) buy
- () 4. The beef _____ two thousand dollars. We don't have enough money to buy it.
(A) spends (B) costs (C) takes (D) makes
- () 5. To learn a new language well _____ a lot of time.
(A) spends (B) takes (C) costs (D) has
- () 6. The doll was cute, so I decided to buy it _____ my daughter.
(A) for (B) to (C) in (D) ×
- () 7. It usually _____ Ruby half an hour _____ a bath.
(A) takes ; takes (B) spends ; to take
(C) costs ; to take (D) takes ; to take
- () 8. A : How much did it _____ you _____ the oranges?
B : They're free. I got them from my uncle.
(A) take ; to buy (B) cost ; to buy
(C) spend ; buying (D) make ; buying
- () 9. Luke seldom spends time _____ books. He likes to play sports.
(A) to read (B) reads (C) read (D) reading
- () 10. A : _____ does Alex spend on online games (線上遊戲) every day?
B : About two hours.
(A) How much money (B) How long money
(C) How much time (D) How many time

- () 11. The man bought a rose and gave _____ .
 (A) Irene it (B) it Irene
 (C) it for Irene (D) it to Irene
- () 12. To ride a bike to the market _____ Mary 15 minutes this morning.
 = Mary _____ 15 minutes riding a bike to the market this morning.
 (A) took ; cost (B) took ; spent (C) spent ; took (D) cost ; spent
- () 13. A : _____ did the jacket cost your brother?
 B : It cost _____ more than NT\$1,500.
 (A) How long ; him (B) How much ; his
 (C) How many ; he (D) How much ; him
- () 14. I saw this skirt in the department store and bought _____ .
 (A) it you (B) it for you (C) it to you (D) you it
- () 15. A : Why are you unhappy? What happened?
 B : My parents don't let me _____ a new cellphone.
 (A) to buy (B) buying (C) buy (D) bought
- () 16. Roger _____ all his money _____ to save his bookstore. Sadly, the business (生意) never got better, so he closed it in the end (最後) . < 改編自 110 年會考題 >
 (A) spent ; try (B) took ; tried
 (C) spent ; trying (D) cost ; to try
- () 17. Ms. Lee usually gives _____ every day, but she didn't give us any today. < 改編自 108 年會考題 >
 (A) homework us (B) us homework
 (C) us to homework (D) homework for us
- () 18. I bought _____ in the supermarket, but I didn't buy any juice. < 改編自 105 年會考題 >
 (A) you some bread (B) some bread you
 (C) some bread to you (D) you for some bread
- () 19. The school _____ all the students wear uniforms (制服) to school. < 改編自 106 年會考題 >
 (A) tells (B) asks (C) makes (D) wants

- () 20. Since (因為) it _____ me lots of time _____ a big meal for my family, I was tired. < 改編自 111 年會考題 >
- (A) took ; preparing (B) cost ; to prepare
(C) spent ; preparing (D) took ; to prepare

二、填空 (請填入正確的動詞或介系詞)

1. Joseph always spends forty minutes _____ (jog) in the morning.
2. Peggy's mother made her _____ (do) the dishes last night.
3. The man wants to buy a bicycle _____ (to / for) his son.
4. Practicing the guitar _____ (spend / take / cost) Bob an hour every day.
5. My aunt doesn't let her son _____ (ride) a motorcycle to school.
6. It will cost you a lot of money _____ (buy) that expensive car.
7. Can you _____ (buy / give) that cup to me? I need it to drink water.
8. Tommy _____ (spend / take / cost) all day studying math yesterday.
9. How long did it _____ (spend / take / cost) Mike to fix his bike?
10. How much does it _____ (spend / take / cost) Hans to buy his lunch?

三、翻譯題

1. My father has me go swimming with him every day.
-

2. How much time do you spend watching TV on weekends?

3. I bought a cake and gave it to my best friend.

4. 他從來不讓他的弟弟使用他的電腦。

5. William 上週日買了兩本書給他的女兒。



四、閱讀測驗

The Winter Sale at Rainbow Kids' Fashion

December 11, 2023 ~ January 11, 2024

Hello, there! Our winter sale (特賣) is going to start! From next Monday to Jan. 11, 2024, we will offer (提供) you a 15% discount (折扣) on everything at our store.

Don't miss the chance!

More information (資訊) about this sale :

- ★ Spend over NT\$1,500 – get a pair of socks for free.
- ★ Spend over NT\$3,000 – get a free baseball cap.
- ★ Spend over NT\$5,000 – get a T-shirt and a cap.

Gift Giveaway (贈品)

Date : Fri., Dec. 22 ~ Mon., Dec. 25, 2023

Time : 11:00 a.m. ~ 13:00 p.m.

Activity: Everyone wearing red clothes can get a reindeer hairband (馴鹿髮箍) or a Christmas hat.

- () 1. Mrs. Potter spends NT\$3,200 buying a coat and pants for her son at Rainbow Kids' Fashion, what can she get?
(A) A T-shirt. (B) A baseball cap. (C) A hairband.
- () 2. It is 12:30 p.m., December 14. Thomas wears a red jacket to Rainbow Kids' Fashion. What gift can he get?
(A) A pair of socks. (B) A reindeer hairband. (C) Nothing.
- () 3. Caroline goes to Rainbow Kids' Fashion during its winter sale. She buys a dress for her daughter, and its price is NT\$700. How much should she pay?
(A) NT\$595. (B) NT\$700. (C) NT\$560.



綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A: What did Edward give you this morning?

B: He _____ me.
(他給我一些桃子。)

2. A: How much did it _____
that dress? (買那件洋裝花了 Shannon 多少錢?)

B: I have no idea. She didn't tell me.

3. A: How much time does your father _____
every weekend? (你爸爸每個周末花多少時間打網球?)

B: More than five hours.

4. A: What did your teacher have you do in the class?

B: She _____ in the class.
(她要我在那堂課練習說英文。)

5. A: How long will it _____ ?
(拖地板將會花費他多少時間?)

B: Maybe 30 minutes.

二、翻譯題

1. 那是我的筆記本。請把它給我。

2. Ella 昨天花了三個小時做她的作業。

3. 我的媽媽叫我每天早上喝一杯牛奶。(用 make 作答)

4. 這兩箱蘋果價值多少錢？

5. 打掃客廳通常花費你多少時間呢？（用 it 當主詞）

6. 買這些漫畫書花了 Terry 600 元。（用虛主詞 it 開頭）

7. 我的姊姊從不讓我穿她的衣服。

8. Allen 的父母下個月將會買一台新電腦給他。

9. 這件大衣花了你多少錢？

10. 昨晚 Dora 花了多少時間為她的家人煮晚餐呢？（用 Dora 當主詞）

三、短文英翻中與選擇

1. 短文英翻中

My best friend, Julia, lives in Taipei. We seldom meet because we are both busy working. Last Sunday was Julia's birthday, and I made a birthday cake for her. I went to Taipei to visit Julia and gave the cake to her. She was surprised (感到驚訝的) to see me. We ate the cake together and she liked it very much. We also spent the afternoon chatting (閒聊) about our lives. It was so wonderful for us to get together on her birthday.

2. 短文選擇

- () (1) When was Julia's birthday?
 (A) Yesterday. (B) Last Sunday. (C) Last Monday.
- () (2) What birthday gift did the writer prepare for Julia?
 (A) A birthday cake.
 (B) A birthday card.
 (C) A camera.
- () (3) What **didn't** the writer do on Julia's birthday?
 (A) She visited Julia in Taipei.
 (B) She had a good time talking with Julia.
 (C) She sent an e-mail to Julia.





綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

我是個國中生。我每天都必須做很多事情。我的爸爸叫我每天早上和他一起去慢跑。我的老師要我放學後寫作業。晚餐後，我的媽媽叫我洗碗盤。在睡覺前，我總是花 30 分鐘閱讀書籍。我每天都很忙碌。

二、克漏字選擇

David : I bought some cookies and 1 them on the table this morning, but they are gone (不見) now!

Gina : Well, Aunt Tracy and her kids came for a visit this afternoon. Mom probably (很可能) gave your cookies 2 the kids...

David : Not again! Last Sunday she gave Uncle Sam's son my comic books, and last month she let her friend's daughter 3 my pens away! She 4 asks me for permission (允許) !

Gina : I know you're angry, brother. But it 5 be better for you to calm down (冷靜下來) and talk to Mom about this later.

David : Later? No way (不行) ! I am going 6 to her right now!

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| () 1. (A) putting | (B) putted | (C) put | (D) puts |
| () 2. (A) with | (B) to | (C) for | (D) in |
| () 3. (A) took | (B) takes | (C) taking | (D) take |
| () 4. (A) never | (B) always | (C) often | (D) usually |

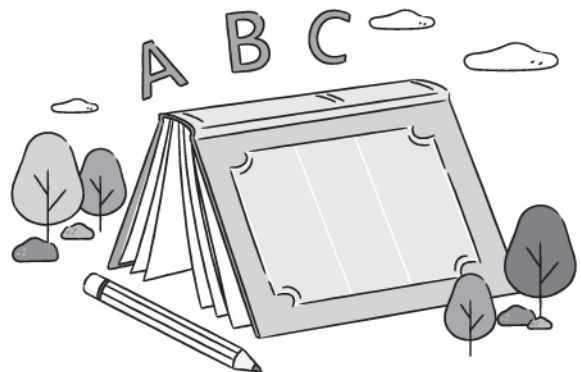
- () 5. (A) does (B) would (C) might (D) have better
- () 6. (A) talk (B) talking (C) talked (D) to talk

三、閱讀測驗

Do you like to play sports? What kind of sport do you play? Some people like to play team sports like basketball, soccer and baseball. For them, it is fun to work hard to win a game with their teammates (隊友). Others enjoy doing sports by themselves; their choices (選擇) would be running, swimming or rock climbing. Doing these sports gives them a chance to focus on (專注於) themselves. The only downside (缺點) would be: they need to spend much time practicing it until they get better at it. Either team sports or one-person sports, spending time to exercise is always a good choice because it's good for your health. And maybe, you'll learn something from it!

*either...or... (不管是……或者是……)

- () 1. Which of the following is NOT a team sport?
 (A) Baseball. (B) Rock climbing. (C) Soccer.
- () 2. Why do some people like to do sports in a team?
 (A) They want to focus on themselves.
 (B) They hate to practice on their own.
 (C) They like to work with their teammates to win a game.
- () 3. Which is true from this reading?
 (A) Running is not a kind of team sport.
 (B) People cannot learn anything from playing sports.
 (C) You can win a baseball game without (沒有) any teammates.



II-6

連綴與感官動詞及so...that...的用法

學習目標

- ① 學會連綴與感官動詞的用法
- ② 知道 so...that...的意思與用法



閱讀特快車

The Ant and The Dove

A long time ago, an ant was so thirsty that she ran to the side of river. She started drinking water from the river, and she kept drinking ^① to her heart's content. After that, the ant felt so happy that she sang and walked along the bank (河邊). However, she didn't walk carefully, so she fell into the river. "Help! Help! Can someone help me?" cried the ant. Then a dove just flew across the river. He heard the ant crying for help, and he plucked (摘; 拉) a leaf from the tree and dropped it into the water. The ant climbed onto the leaf, and she ^② went across the river safely. She thanked the dove for saving her life.

A few days later, the ant was taking a rest under a tree. When she raised (抬起) her head and looked at the treetop (樹頂), she found the dove. Then, she saw a man walking toward the tree quietly, and he tried to climb up the tree and catch the dove. The ant knew that the dove was ^③ in trouble. Before the man got closer to the dove, the ant bit (咬) the man's leg. The man felt the pain (疼痛) on his leg and cried out. He didn't catch the dove because he was so loud that the dove got frightened (驚嚇) and flew away. This time the ant saved the dove's life. They became good friends forever.



文章說明

- ① to one's heart's content : 心滿意足 (片語)
- ② go across : 穿越 (片語)
- ③ in trouble : 處於麻煩中 (片語)



文法報報

Topic 1 連綴動詞與感官動詞

這個單元會帶大家看連綴動詞和感官動詞。連綴動詞是什麼呢？它在句子主要的功用就是把名詞或形容詞跟主詞連結起來，如「I am a student.」，「am」就是把「a student」和「I」連結起來，也就是「I」等同於「a student」，所以常見的 Be 動詞就是連綴動詞的代表。而感官動詞，顧名思義就是跟感覺有關的動詞，如「He heard Sandy sing the song.」，這裡的 heard 就是感官動詞。噢，這裡怎麼看到二個動詞在句子裡，是不是錯了？別急，接下來會清楚的介紹這二種動詞以及它們的用法唷。

一、連綴動詞的用法

我們會用連綴動詞來連接**主詞**以及描述主詞狀態的**名詞**或**形容詞**，常見的連綴動詞大約分成三類，分別是：「Be 動詞」、意思是「變成……」的動詞、意思是「……起來」的動詞。現在就一起來看看它們的用法吧！

1. Be 動詞

Be 動詞也是一種連綴動詞喔！

例 1：Andy is an actor. (Andy 是一個演員。)

例 2：Sarah was my best friend before. (Sarah 以前是我最好的朋友。)

例 3：My cat is usually unhappy. (我的貓通常不快樂。)

例 4：He was shy before. (他以前很害羞。)

★ 註 1：Be 動詞這個連綴動詞可以連接主詞與描述主詞狀態的**名詞**喔。例如：例 1 中的 Andy 是主詞，後面的 an actor 是 Andy 的職業，描述 Andy 的身分狀態；Andy 和 an actor 中間用 Be 動詞 is 連接起來。

★ 註 2：Be 動詞這個連綴動詞可以連接主詞與描述主詞狀態的**形容詞**。例如：例 4 中的 shy 描述主詞 He 的狀態，而 He 和 shy 中間用 Be 動詞 was 連接起來。

2. 意思是「變成……」的連綴動詞

這一類連綴動詞有：**become**（變成、成為）；**get**（變得）；**turn**（變得）；**grow**（變得）這 4 個字。

例 1：Mark **becomes** a father.（Mark 成為爸爸。）

例 2：My parents **get** old.（我的父母親變老了。）

例 3：Sue's face **turned** red after playing tennis.（打完網球，Sue 的臉變紅了。）

例 4：These girls **grow** taller and taller.（這些女孩變得越來越高。）

★ 註：become、get、turn、grow 這 4 個連綴動詞連接主詞與描述主詞狀態的名詞或形容詞喔。例如：例 1 中的 becomes 連接了「Mark」和「a father」；例 3 中的 turned 連接了「Sue's face」和「red」。

3. 意思是「……起來」的連綴動詞

這一類連綴動詞有：**look**（看起來）、**feel**（感覺 / 摸起來）、**sound**（聽起來）、**taste**（嚐起來）、**smell**（聞起來）這 5 個字。

例 1：Jack **looks** unhappy.（Jack 看起來不快樂。）

例 2：The water **feels** cold.（這水感覺 / 摸起來是冰冷的。）

例 3：Your ideas **sound** great.（你的主意聽起來很棒。）

例 4：These papayas **taste** delicious.（這些木瓜嚐起來很美味。）

例 5：The beef **smells** nice.（這牛肉聞起來很香。）

★ 註：look、feel、sound、taste、smell 這 5 個連綴動詞連接主詞與描述主詞狀態的形容詞喔。例如：例 3 中的 sound 連接了「Your ideas」和「great」；例 4 中的 taste 連接了「These papayas」和「delicious」。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Amy _____ angry now.
 (A) is (B) was (C) be (D) being
- () 2. My parents look _____.
 (A) happily (B) happy
 (C) happiness (D) happiest
- () 3. The story sounds _____.
 (A) to funny (B) funnily
 (C) funniest (D) funny
- () 4. I get _____ and _____.
 (A) strong ; strong (B) strong ; stronger
 (C) stronger ; stronger (D) stronger ; strong



 文法補充站

〈連綴動詞的其他句型〉

連綴動詞除了上面介紹的用法，它們還可用於其他句型中喔，接下來我們就一起來看看吧！

(一) Be 動詞、look、feel、sound、taste、smell 可與「like + 名詞」搭配

例 1：Paul **is like a giant**. (Paul 像個巨人。)

例 2：The ice **looks like a dog**. (這冰塊看起來像隻狗。)

例 3：It **tastes like lemon juice**. (它嚐起來像檸檬汁。)

★ 註：like 在這樣的句子裡是連接詞，是「像」的意思，不需要做第三人稱單數或任何時態的變化喔。

(二) look、feel、sound、taste、smell 可與「How...?」搭配

例 1：How do his nails **look**? (他的指甲看起來如何?)

例 2：How do my ideas **sound**? (我的主意聽起來如何?)

例 3：How does this flower **smell**? (這朵花聞起來如何?)

★ 註：這樣的句型，中文解釋為「……起來如何？」。

(三) look、feel、sound、taste、smell 可與「What...like?」搭配

例 1：What do his nails **look like**? (他的指甲看起來像什麼?)

例 2：What do my ideas **sound like**? (我的主意聽起來像什麼?)

例 3：What does this flower **smell like**? (這朵花聞起來像什麼?)

★ 註：這樣的句型，中文解釋為「……起來像什麼？」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. Amy _____ a nice person.
(A) looks like (B) looks (C) look like (D) looks likes

() 2. _____ your parents feel?
(A) What do (B) What does (C) How do (D) How does

() 3. _____ does this fish taste _____?
(A) How ; like (B) What ; like (C) What ; × (D) How ; likes

二、感官動詞的用法

和我們的感官有關的動詞，如：看到、聽到、感覺……等等，後面會先接受詞，之後再接原形動詞或現在分詞（V-ing）來補充說明受詞的狀態。常見的感官動詞大約分成三類，分別是：視覺類、聽覺類、感覺類。現在就來看看它們的用法吧！

1. 視覺類感官動詞（口訣：三看）

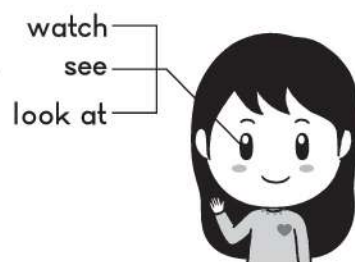
這一類感官動詞有：watch（觀看）、see（看到）、look at（注視）。

例 1：I **watched** them eat a big meal last night.

（我昨晚看著他們吃大餐。）

例 2：I **watched** them eating a big meal last night.

（我昨晚看著他們在吃大餐。）



★ 註 1：watch 後面接了受詞 them，而 them 後面的「eat a big meal」和「eating a big meal」則用來述說 them 的狀態。

★ 註 2：受詞後面接原形動詞是用來強調受詞做動作的整個過程或整個事實，例如：例 1 中的「I watched them eat a big meal」就是表達我看著他們吃大餐的整個過程。

★ 註 3：受詞後面接 V-ing 是用來強調受詞正在做這個動作或連續性，例如：例 2 中的「I watched them eating a big meal」就是表達我看著他們正在吃大餐這個動作。

例 3：He **saw** May **cry** sadly yesterday.（他昨天看到 May 難過地哭泣。）

例 4：He **saw** May **crying** sadly yesterday.（他昨天看到 May 難過地哭泣著。）

★ 註：從上面的例 3 來看，see 的受詞 May 後面接 cry，是強調看到 May 哭的整個過程。而例 4 用 crying，則強調看到 May 正在哭。

例 5：Ben **looked at** his son **shout** angrily.（Ben 注視著他兒子生氣地喊叫。）

例 6：Ben **looked at** his son **shouting** angrily.
（Ben 注視著他兒子生氣地喊叫著。）

★ 註：從上面的例 5 來看，look at 的受詞 his son 後面接 shout，是強調看 his son 喊叫的整個過程。而例 6 用 shouting，則強調看 his son 正在喊叫。

2. 聽覺類感官動詞（口訣：二聽）

這一類感官動詞有：hear（聽到）、listen to（傾聽；聆聽）。

例 1：Nancy **heard** her parents **talk** happily.

（Nancy 聽到她父母親開心地談話。）

例 2：Nancy **heard** her parents **talking** happily.

（Nancy 聽到她父母親開心地在談話。）

例 3：We **listened to** Lily **sing** songs.

（我們聆聽 Lily 唱歌。）

例 4：We **listened to** Lily **singing** songs.

（我們聆聽 Lily 在唱歌。）



★ 註 1：hear 和 listen to 這二個聽覺類的感官動詞就如同視覺類的感官動詞一樣，受詞後面接**原形動詞**是用來**強調受詞做動作的整個過程或整個事實**，例如：例 1 中的「Nancy heard her parents talk happily」以及例 3 中的「We listened to Lily sing songs」。

★ 註 2：受詞後面接 **V-ing** 是用來**強調受詞正在做這個動作或連續性**，例如：例 2 中的「Nancy heard her parents talking happily」以及例 4 中的「We listened to Lily singing songs」。

3. 感覺類感官動詞（口訣：一感覺、一注意）

這一類感官動詞有：feel（感覺）、notice（注意到）。

例 1：I **feel** the car **move**.（我感覺車子移動。）

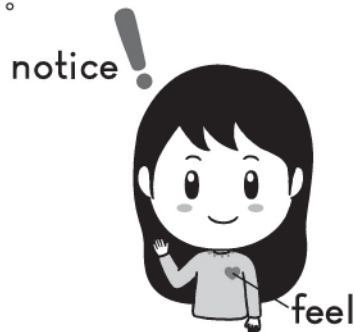
例 2：I **feel** the car **moving**.（我感覺車子在移動。）

例 3：They **noticed** John **put on** a strange hat.

（他們注意到 John 戴了一頂奇怪的帽子。）

例 4：They **noticed** John **putting on** a strange hat.

（他們注意到 John 戴上一頂奇怪的帽子。）

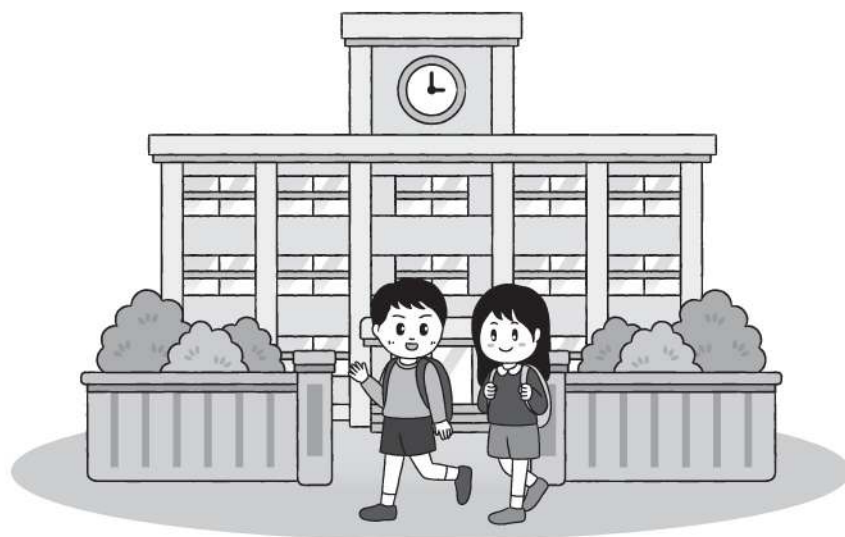


★ 註：如同上面介紹的二類感官動詞，feel 和 notice 這二個感官動詞的受詞後面可接**原形動詞**來**強調受詞做動作的整個過程或整個事實**，例如：例 1 的「move」與例 3 的「put on」。也可接 **V-ing** 來**強調受詞正在做這個動作或連續性**，例如：例 2「moving」與例 4「putting on」。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. My brother looked at Mark _____ baseball.
 (A) be playing (B) to play
 (C) play (D) played
- () 2. I hear him _____ goodbye every day.
 (A) to say (B) say
 (C) said (D) be saying
- () 3. She watches the bus _____ .
 (A) coming (B) to come
 (C) be coming (D) to coming
- () 4. They noticed the cat _____ fish.
 (A) to eat (B) be eating
 (C) to eating (D) eating



文法得來速

❖ 連綴動詞

連綴動詞	例 句
Be 動詞	<p>修飾主詞</p> <p><u>Sarah</u> was <u>my best friend</u> before.</p> <p>名詞</p>
	<p>修飾主詞</p> <p><u>My cat</u> is usually <u>unhappy</u>.</p> <p>形容詞</p>

連綴動詞	中文	例 句
become	變成……	<p>Mark becomes a father.</p> <p>名詞</p>
get		<p>My parents get old.</p> <p>形容詞</p>
turn		<p>Sue's face turned red after playing tennis.</p> <p>形容詞</p>
grow		<p>These girls grow taller and taller.</p> <p>形容詞</p>

連綴動詞	中文	例 句
look	……起來	<p>Jack looks unhappy.</p> <p>形容詞</p>
feel		<p>The water feels cold.</p> <p>形容詞</p>
sound		<p>Your ideas sound great.</p> <p>形容詞</p>
taste		<p>These papayas taste delicious.</p> <p>形容詞</p>
smell		<p>The beef smells nice.</p> <p>形容詞</p>

❖ 感官動詞

1. 「三看」

感官動詞	意涵	例 句
watch	專注看 持續一段 時間	I watched them eat a big meal last night. (強調 事實) 原形 V
		I watched them eating a big meal last night. (強調 動作正進行) Ving
see	不經意 看到	He saw May cry sadly yesterday. (強調 事實) 原形 V
		He saw May crying sadly yesterday. (強調 動作正進行) Ving
look at	專注看	Ben looked at his son shout angrily. (強調 事實) 原形 V
		Ben looked at his son shouting angrily. (強調 動作正進行) Ving

2. 「二聽」

感官動詞	意涵	例 句
hear	不經意 聽到	Nancy heard her parents talk happily. (強調 事實) 原形 V
		Nancy heard her parents talking happily. (強調 動作正進行) Ving
listen to	專注聽	We listened to Lily sing songs. (強調 事實) 原形 V
		We listened to Lily singing songs. (強調 動作正進行) Ving

3. 「一覺一注意」

感官動詞	例 句
feel	I feel the car <u>move</u> . (強調事實) 原形 V
	I feel the car <u>moving</u> . (強調動作正進行) Ving
notice	They noticed John <u>put on</u> a strange hat. (強調事實) 原形 V
	They noticed John <u>putting on</u> a strange hat. (強調動作正進行) Ving

Topic 2 so...that... 的用法

日常生活中我們常聽到：「這個小女孩如此可愛，以致於每個人都喜歡她」、「老師說得如此快，以致於我們都聽不懂」，若要用英文表達這二個句子，我們可以運用「so...that...」這個句構喔。接下來，我們一起來看看如何用英文表達上面二個句子吧！

一、so...that...的用法及句型

so...that...，中文意思是「如此……以致於……」。

例 1：The little girl looks so cute that everyone likes her.

(這個小女孩看起來很可愛，每個人都喜歡她。)

例 2：I am so tired that I couldn't talk with you now.

(我是如此疲累，以致於我現在無法跟你說話。)

例 3：The teacher spoke so fast that we couldn't understand.

(老師說得太快，以致於我們不懂。)

例 4：Paul works so hard that he gets much money.

(Paul 工作如此認真，他賺許多錢。)

- ★ 註 1：so 是副詞，用來修飾後面的形容詞或副詞。例如：例 1 中的 so 修飾形容詞 cute，例 3 中的 so 修飾副詞 fast。
- ★ 註 2：that 是連接詞，接在它後面的句子表達「結果」。例如：例 1 中的「everyone likes her」，例 3 中的「we couldn't understand」。

 隨堂小練習

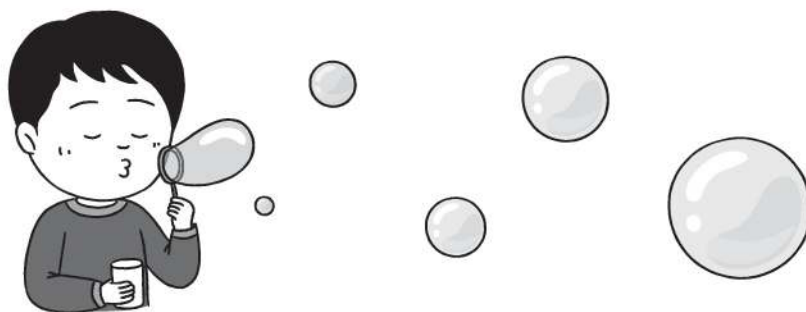
❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Mark walked so _____ that he missed the train.
 (A) slowly (B) slow (C) slowed (D) slowing
- () 2. The music sounds so _____ that we like it.
 (A) well (B) best (C) good (D) ×

❖ 翻譯題

1. 天氣如此熱，以致於我們想吃冰淇淋。

2. Tom 跑得如此快，他贏得第一名 (first place)。





綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. My uncle _____ a teacher in this school before.
(A) be (B) is (C) was (D) being
- () 2. You look _____. What happened?
(A) unhappily (B) unhappy (C) sadly (D) saddest
- () 3. Miranda's mother is beautiful. She looks _____.
(A) like an actress (B) an actress (C) a singer (D) like singer
- () 4. The weather gets even _____ when it comes to the end of December.
(A) colder (B) coldest (C) colder (D) coldly
- () 5. I got a cake from Emily this morning. The cake tasted _____.
(A) yummiy (B) yummy
(C) most yummy (D) to yummy
- () 6. Mr. and Mrs. Wang love each other (彼此) very much. They want to grow _____ together.
(A) old (B) oldest (C) like old (D) to old
- () 7. The man likes to look at his kids _____ quietly at night.
(A) to sleep (B) slept (C) be sleeping (D) sleep
- () 8. Did you notice Peter _____ on the phone angrily just now?
(A) to talked (B) talks (C) talking (D) to talk
- () 9. Who is that boy? I often see him _____ tennis with your son in the park.
(A) plays (B) to play (C) play (D) played
- () 10. Wow! The pizza smells so _____ that I want to take a bite (咬一口) now.
(A) terribly (B) good (C) nicely (D) badly
- () 11. The patient (病人) became _____ after taking the medicine.
(A) best (B) nicely (C) better (D) more good

- () 12. A : _____ does the idea sound? B : It sounds boring.
 (A) What (B) How (C) How much (D) Where
- () 13. When I walked my dog in the park, I saw Teddy _____ there.
 (A) exercises (B) to exercise
 (C) exercising (D) be exercised
- () 14. The weather is _____ cold _____ I don't want to go out.
 (A) so ; that (B) too ; to (C) so ; to (D) too ; for
- () 15. A : _____ does the pie smell like?
 B : It smells like _____ .
 (A) How ; chocolate (B) What ; great
 (C) How ; good (D) What ; chocolate
- () 16. A : Did you hear anything last night?
 B : Yes. I _____ someone _____ all night, so I didn't sleep well.
 (A) heard ; singing (B) heard ; sings
 (C) hear ; sang (D) heard ; singing
- () 17. This cloud (雲) looks _____ and that one is like a frog.
 (A) a whale (B) like cute
 (C) likes a hat (D) like a dog
- () 18. The boy doesn't feel the car _____ because he is sleeping.
 (A) moving (B) moves (C) being move (D) to move
- () 19. That cake tasted so _____ Mom didn't eat it all.
 (A) sweetly ; that (B) sweet ; to
 (C) sweet ; that (D) sweetly ; for
- () 20. The leaves of the tree usually start to _____ in October.
 (A) turn ; like yellow (B) turn ; yellow
 (C) turns ; yellow (D) turning ; yellow

二、句子重組

1. her mother / sandwiches. / The girl / making / watched

2. she was / when / became a nurse / Elaine / 23 years old.

3. was so expensive / couldn't buy it. / The skirt / Nancy / that

4. looks / Andy's / a small bus. / pencil case / like

5. How / after / did / your brother feel / taking a rest?

三、翻譯題

1. We listened to the man playing the piano in the restaurant.

2. Monica always gets angry when her son doesn't do his homework.

3. Jason was so hungry that he ate two hamburgers and a hot dog.

4. What does the cup of water taste like?

5. I noticed Ricky walk into the kitchen five minutes ago.



綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. Ben feeds his cat much food every day, so it grows _____ and _____ .
 (A) fat ; fat (B) fat ; fatter
 (C) fatter ; fatter (D) more fat ; fat
- () 2. Your hands feel _____ ! You should put on your gloves.
 (A) ice (B) like ice (C) like cold (D) likes ice
- () 3. A : It's so hot today! Let's eat some ice cream.
 B : That sounds _____ .
 (A) like good (B) like a good idea
 (C) well (D) wonderfully
- () 4. The little boy is looking at that dog _____ on the grass over there.
 (A) runs (B) to run (C) rolled (D) rolling
- () 5. A : _____ did your brother look when he heard the news?
 B : He looked very _____ .
 (A) How ; happy (B) What ; happy
 (C) How ; like happy (D) What ; like happy
- () 6. Why do you keep watching me _____ my pizza? Do you want to have a bite (咬一口) ?
 (A) ate (B) to eat (C) eat (D) eats
- () 7. A : _____ does the pie taste _____ ?
 B : Um, not very yummy.
 (A) How ; likes (B) What ; like (C) How ; × (D) What ; ×
- () 8. Autumn is coming, so it is getting _____ and _____ these days.
 (A) cool ; cooler (B) cooler ; cooler
 (C) coolest ; coolest (D) cooler ; coolest

- () 9. A : Your cousin _____ a nice person.
B : Yes, he's really nice.
(A) looks (B) looks likes (C) look like (D) looks like
- () 10. Mrs. Lee smiled when she listened to her daughter _____
songs.
(A) singing (B) sang (C) sings (D) to sing
- () 11. I was _____ thirsty _____ I drank two bottles of water
at a time.
(A) so ; that (B) too ; to
(C) so ; too (D) too ; that
- () 12. A : Do you feel the ground _____ ?
B : Yes. It must be an earthquake (地震) .
(A) shakes (B) shaking (C) to shake (D) shook
- () 13. Vincent ate a lot of snacks this evening. Now he's too full (飽的)
_____ have dinner.
(A) to (B) for (C) that (D) because
- () 14. A : What do I look like in the costume (服裝) ? B : _____
(A) You look tired. (B) You're handsome.
(C) You like blue caps. (D) You look like a prince.
- () 15. What's wrong with Ivy? I just saw _____ angrily out of the
room.
(A) she walk (B) her walks (C) she walked (D) her walk
- () 16. A lot of cows on this farm are getting sick. The problem is
_____ serious (嚴重的) _____ the farm owner (主人)
decides to close the farm today. < 改編 103 年會考題 >
(A) too ; to (B) so ; that (C) so ; to (D) very ; for
- () 17. All the students were surprised (驚訝的) when they watched their
teacher _____ at the party. < 改編 112 年會考題 >
(A) dances (B) to dance
(C) is dancing (D) dancing

- () 18. Katie won't enjoy reading any of the books on your desk. They look _____. < 改編 106 年會考題 >
- (A) like boring (B) greatly
(C) boring (D) like nicely
- () 19. You need both good luck and hard work to become _____. < 改編 107 年會考題 >
- (A) a successful actor (B) successfully
(C) like successful (D) more successful actor
- () 20. My cat got excited (興奮的) when it saw my brother _____ butterflies. < 改編 105 年會考題 >
- (A) catches (B) to catch (C) catching (D) caught

二、填空

- Edward's dad is watching him _____ (do) his homework.
- The green tea _____ (taste) like coffee. It's so strange.
- The skirt is _____ long that this short girl can't wear it.
- Betty heard her mother _____ (talk) on the phone just now.
- The tree grows _____ (tall) and _____ (tall) as time goes by (隨時間推移) .
- _____ (how / what) did the vegetable soup smell like?
- Jane walks so lightly that sometimes I don't even notice her _____ (come) near me.
- _____ (how / what) does your father feel after work every day?
- Did you see the little girl _____ (feed) a dog on the street?

10. The question was so difficult _____ all of us couldn't answer it.

三、翻譯題

1. I was so angry at Gary that I didn't talk to him all day.

2. Emily looks so beautiful in that purple dress.

3. Howard is listening to his son reading a story now.

4. 他那時正在睡覺，所以他沒感覺到地面搖晃。

5. 這杯水嚐起來像檸檬汁。

四、閱讀測驗

Jessica often saw a short and thin old man sit on a bench in the park near her house. That man always wore old clothes and sat there by himself (獨自), so Jessica thought, "He must be very poor and lonely."

On the morning of this Christmas, Jessica went jogging in the park as usual (如往常), and she noticed many kids following (跟隨) the old man. Each of the kids had a present in their hands and talked to the old man happily. When the old man saw Jessica, he brought a box and walked to her. He gave the box to Jessica and said to her with a big smile, "Merry Christmas! I bought gifts for everyone, and this is for you." At that moment, Jessica understood her mistake (錯誤) and changed her idea about the old man. Since (自從) then, she tells herself not to judge (評斷) people by the way they look.

- () 1. Why did many kids follow the old man?
 (A) They wanted to buy clothes from him.
 (B) They were playing games with him.
 (C) The old man gave them Christmas presents.
 (D) The old man shouted at them.
- () 2. What was Jessica doing when she saw the old man and the kids?
 (A) She was jogging.
 (B) She was talking on the phone.
 (C) She was buying gifts.
 (D) She was sitting on a bench.
- () 3. Which is true?
 (A) The old man is poor and lonely.
 (B) Jessica never goes jogging in the park.
 (C) Jessica got a Christmas gift for the old man.
 (D) Jessica got a gift from the old man.





綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A : What are you looking at?

B : I am looking at _____ .

(我正在看我兒子騎腳踏車。)

2. A : What does the candy taste like?

B : It _____ .

(它嚐起來像咖啡。)

3. A : Why don't you eat your soup?

B : It is so _____ now.

(它很燙，以致於我無法現在喝它。)

4. A : I love cakes and pizza! They are so delicious!

B : Don't eat too much of them, or

_____ .

(你將會很容易變胖。)

5. A : Did you eat dinner at that new restaurant last Friday?

B : Yes, the food there was good. When having dinner there, I also

listened to _____ .

(一個樂團演奏音樂)

二、翻譯題

1. 他的兒子上個月成為了一名工程師。

2. 你的叔叔長得像什麼樣子？

3. 我們今天早上看到 Gina 在公園裡跳舞。

4. 雨下得很大，以致於我的衣服都濕掉了。

5. 她五分鐘前聽見她的媽媽在開心地唱歌。

6. 這件大衣看起來像一條毯子。

7. 你吃完藥之後感覺如何？

8. 我今天早上太晚起床，以致於我上學遲到了。

9. Susan 很會做蛋糕。她的蛋糕嚐起來都很美味。

10. 你有注意到 Wendy 今天穿了新鞋子嗎？

2. 短文選擇

- () (1) What did Natalie look like two years ago?
- (A) She liked fast food and snacks.
 (B) She seldom looked at herself.
 (C) She was very heavy then.
 (D) She looked wonderful then.
- () (2) Why did Natalie want to lose weight?
- (A) Because she broke a chair in a restaurant.
 (B) Because her parents told her to lose weight.
 (C) Because her classmates didn't play with her.
 (D) Because her health got worse.
- () (3) Which is true about Natalie?
- (A) She doesn't do any exercise now.
 (B) She liked to eat fast food before.
 (C) She was thin before, but now she's heavy.
 (D) She seldom ate snacks or fast food.





綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

我上周日跟我的爸媽一起去山裡健行。因為山裡沒有很多車子，所以空氣很新鮮。我們聽到了很多鳥在鳴叫（call），還看到了一些猴子在爬樹。我因為太早起床，以致於很快就覺得累了。所以，那天我們只健行了一個小時而已。

二、克漏字選擇

Kelly and her classmates started a special plan three months ago : They took care of an old woman after school every day. The old woman lived on her own and had some problems walking properly (正常地) , so Kelly and her classmates 1 her to clean her house and bought food and necessities (必需品) 2 her. They also spent some time 3 with the old woman, telling jokes (笑話) and singing songs for her. They really made the woman's life 4 more comfortable and colorful (多采多姿的) . Now, the old woman always sits in front of her house and 5 for them every day. With Kelly and her classmates' love and help, the old woman is getting 6 and 6 day by day (日漸；一天天) .

- () 1. (A) helps (B) help (C) will help (D) helped
- () 2. (A) on (B) for (C) to (D) by
- () 3. (A) talking (B) talked (C) talk (D) to talk
- () 4. (A) becomes (B) became (C) become (D) to become
- () 5. (A) waiting (B) waited (C) to wait (D) waits

- () 6. (A) happier ; happier (B) happy ; happier
(C) happier ; happiest (D) happily ; happily

三、閱讀測驗

Lucas : Hey, Marie. Didn't you sleep well last night? I noticed you yawn (打呵欠) many times this morning.

Marie : Oh... I only slept for one or two hours because my five month old son kept crying and didn't want to sleep. My husband and I tried many ways to make him stop, but none (沒有一個) of them worked.

Lucas : Um, it's not an easy job to make babies stop crying. Sometimes they cry because they're hungry or feeling ill (不舒服的), and sometimes they just want parents' attention (關心 ; 注意) and love.

Marie : You sound like a pro (專家) . Did your children also cry a lot at night when they were babies?

Lucas : Yes, my first son, Max, did. Before he turned one year old, my wife and I didn't have enough sleep every day.

Marie : Wow, it sounds like a hard time for you two.

Lucas : That year was truly hard for us, but we learned from the experience (經驗) . So we had less problems in taking care of our second child.

- () 1. Why did Marie keep yawning this morning?
(A) She was sick and didn't sleep well last night.
(B) Her son kept crying last night so she didn't sleep well.
(C) She went to bed too late last night.
- () 2. Why did Marie's 5 month old baby cry last night?
(A) He was hungry.
(B) He wasn't feeling good.
(C) We don't know.
- () 3. Which is true about Lucas?
(A) He doesn't have enough sleep every day.
(B) His children didn't cry much at night when being babies.
(C) His son cried a lot at night before turning one year old.

II-7

現在完成式及所有格代名詞 與反身代名詞

學習目標

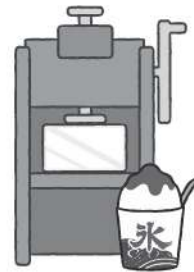
- ① 學會現在完成式的用途和句構
- ② 知道所有格代名詞與反身代名詞的意思與用途



閱讀特快車

Ice King Saved His Shop

Jerry Stevens has been unhappy these months. He ^①used to be a proud businessman (商人) of a successful shaved ice (刨冰) shop. His shop has opened for more than 15 years. His highest sales (銷售) numbers were 1,899 plates a week ; people called him "Ice King."



But it all changed when the cookie shop across the street started selling ice cream cookies. It took half of his business (生意) away. Jerry tried to get help, so he invited his sister's only son, Dan, to work for him. But it didn't help much because Dan always let people try their shaved ice *FOR FREE*. So, many people came but only few bought. ^②Even worse, the sales did not get better when the weather started to become warmer and warmer. Jerry began to worry; he even planned to send Dan back home. But...how could he do that? His sister would be very sad. He didn't know what to do.

Luckily, good news came from the cookie shop. It was looking

for a clerk, and it was a great chance to get Dan out of his store without sending him home. After taking the shopkeeper (店主) to several (幾個) nice dinners, Jerry helped Dan get the job. That's the perfect (完美的) way to solve the problem. Now, Dan may help Jerry bring back his business because people may feel thirsty from eating too many cookies. < 引用與改寫自103年會考文章 >

- 文章說明
- ① used to : 以前曾是…… (片語)
 - ② even worse : 更糟糕的是 (片語)





文法報報

Topic 1 現在完成式

「他已經 / 尚未完成他的功課」、「我曾經去過日本」、「你已經看了 3 小時的電視」，像這樣的語句就會用現在完成式來表達。現在完成式句構最大的特徵就是「**have / has + 過去分詞**（註一）」，而現在完成式又會使用在什麼時機呢？現在就讓我們一起來看看以下說明吧！

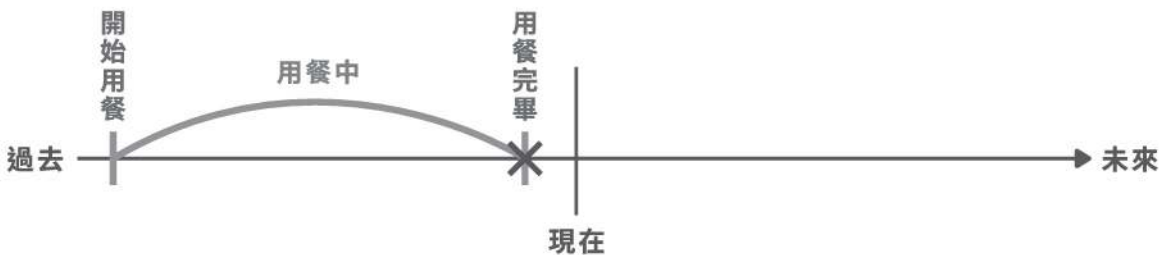
（註一）：過去分詞是動詞三態之一，動詞三態的介紹請見文法補充站。

一、現在完成式的使用時機

現在完成式用來表達在**現在**這個時間點之前或當下「（未）完成某事」，或是**到目前為止**「擁有的經驗」，以及「某情況或動作在過去某個時間點開始並持續到**現在**」。

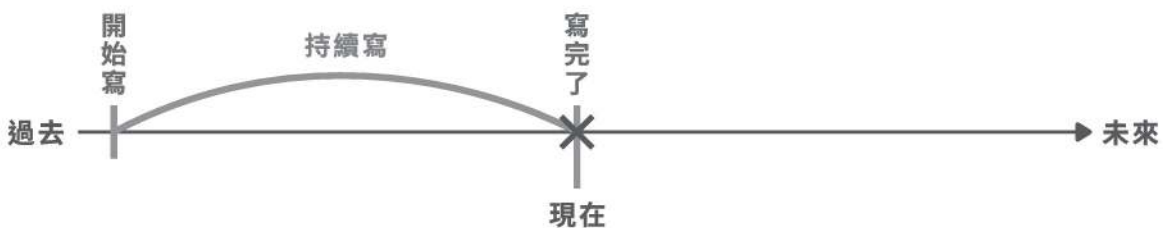
1. 「現在」這個時間點之前已經或尚未完成某事

現在完成式可以用來表達一個**剛剛才完成**的動作或狀況，這時常常和 **just** 這個字一起使用。比方說：I have just finished my lunch.（我才剛把我的午餐吃完。）



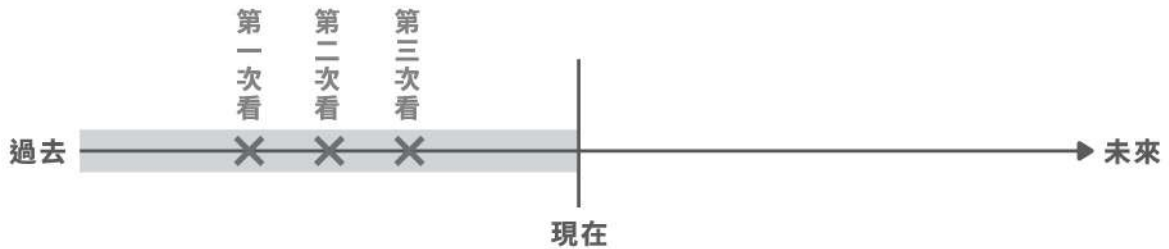
2. 「現在」這個時間點當下已經或尚未完成某事

現在完成式也可以用來表達一個動作或一件事物在過去發生了一段時間，並且在說話的當下**已經完成**。比方說：Andy has done his homework.（Andy 已經完成他的作業。）



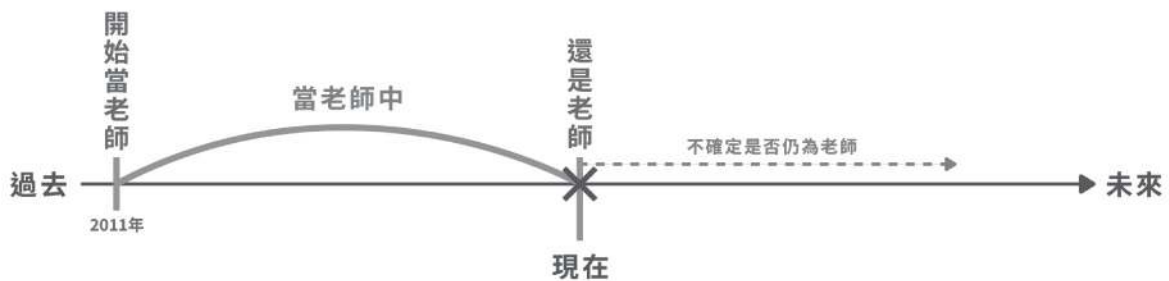
3. 到「現在」為止擁有的經驗

現在完成式也可以表達到目前為止有過……的經驗。比方說：They have seen this movie three times. (他們已經看這部電影 3 次了。)



4. 某情況或動作在過去某個時間點開始並持續到「現在」

現在完成式也能表達事情或動作在過去發生，而且持續到現在的情況。這個用法也常跟 since 以及 for 搭配使用。比方說：He has been a teacher since 2011. (他從 2011 年開始就是老師。)



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Amy _____ her homework.
 (A) has done (B) have done (C) done (D) is done
- () 2. They _____ in America for 20 years.
 (A) are live (B) has lived (C) have lived (D) living
- () 3. We _____ this movie three times.
 (A) has seen (B) have seen (C) seen (D) seeing

 文法補充站

〈 動詞三態 〉

我們統稱原形動詞、過去式動詞及過去分詞為「動詞三態」，現在就讓我們一起來看看動詞三態的分類整理吧！

1. 規則動詞

原形動詞加上 **ed**、**d**、去 **y** 加 **ied** 或重複子音字尾再加 **ed** 而形成過去式與過去分詞的，我們叫它們規則動詞。範例如下：

中文	動詞的原形	動詞的過去式	動詞的過去分詞
及格、經過	pass	passed	passed
決定	decide	decided	decided
拷貝、抄襲	copy	copied	copied
停止	stop	stopped	stopped

2. 不規則動詞

過去式與過去分詞的形成並非在原形動詞後面加上 **ed** 或 **d** 的動詞，我們叫它們不規則動詞。

(1) 不規則動詞 **AAA** 指的是原形動詞、過去式及過去分詞三者的形態是一樣的。範例如下：

中文	動詞的原形 A	動詞的過去式 A	動詞的過去分詞 A
花費	cost	cost	cost
切割、剪	cut	cut	cut
傷害、使疼痛	hurt	hurt	hurt
讓	let	let	let

(2) 不規則動詞 **ABB** 指的是過去式與過去分詞同形，但與原形動詞不同。範例如下：

中文	動詞的原形 A	動詞的過去式 B	動詞的過去分詞 B
帶來	bring	brought	brought
感覺	feel	felt	felt
離開、丟下	leave	left	left
輸、失去	lose	lost	lost
得到	get	got	got / gotten

(3) 不規則動詞 ABA 指的是原形動詞及過去分詞二者的形態是一樣的，過去式的形態則與它們不同。範例如下：

中文	動詞的原形 A	動詞的過去式 B	動詞的過去分詞 A
來	come	came	come
跑	run	ran	run
成為、變成	become	became	become

(4) 不規則動詞 ABC 指的是原形動詞、過去式及過去分詞三者的形態完全不一樣，有各自的形態。範例如下：

中文	動詞的原形 A	動詞的過去式 B	動詞的過去分詞 C
開始	begin	began	begun
落下	fall	fell	fallen
忘記	forget	forgot	forgotten
給	give	gave	given

 隨堂小練習

❖ 填充題（寫出下列動詞的三態變化）

	現在式	過去式	過去分詞
1. bring	_____	_____	_____
2. feel	_____	_____	_____
3. run	_____	_____	_____
4. cost	_____	_____	_____
5. pass	_____	_____	_____
6. give	_____	_____	_____
7. let	_____	_____	_____

二、現在完成式的句型

現在完成式句構最大的特徵就是「have / has + 過去分詞」，have / has 在這裡是助動詞，have 用於主詞是第一、第二人稱以及複數時，has 則用於主詞是第三人稱單數。句型可以分為三種，肯定句、否定句和疑問句，我們一起來看看吧！

1. 肯定句

肯定句可以加入 already，也可不加。句中的 already 可放在 have / has 後面，也可放在句尾。

- 例 1：Ken **has just finished** his breakfast. (Ken 才剛吃完他的早餐。)
- 例 2：Andy **has (already) seen** this movie. (Andy 已經看過這部電影。)
- 例 3：I **have read** this book twice (already). (我已經看了這本書二次。)
- 例 4：We **have lived** here for ten years. (我們已經住在這裡 10 年了。)
- 例 5：They **have been** teachers since 1998. (他們自 1998 年起就是老師。)

★ 註 1：除了 just，從上面的例 3、例 4 和例 5 我們可以看到次數（如：once, twice, three times, several times）、for + 一段時間、since + 過去某個時間點，這幾類語詞會與現在完成式搭配。

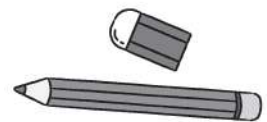
★ 註 2：除了上述例句中的語詞，常與現在完成式搭配的還有：recently / lately（最近）、in one's life（在……一生之中）、before（以前）。

- 例 6：It **has been** three hours **since** he **finished** his homework.
(自從他寫完作業到現在已經 3 小時了。)

- 例 7：It's **been** a long time **since** she **left** Japan. (她離開日本已經很長時間了。)

★ 註 1：如要表達自從某事或動作後，到現在已經歷時多久了，我們可用以下句型：It has been + 一段時間 + since + 主詞 + 過去式動詞 + ……。

★ 註 2：It has been = It's been。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 翻譯題

1. Kelly 已經住在台灣 20 年了。

2. 我們已經看了這部電影三次。

3. 自從他去美國到現在已經 6 年了。

2. 否定句

在 **have** 以及 **has** 後面加上 **not** 或 **never** 就是否定句，而 **have / has** 能和 **not** 縮寫成 **haven't / hasn't**。如果要表示某動作尚未完成，可以在句尾加入 **yet**，也可不加喔。

例 1：I **have not / haven't seen** him before. (我以前從沒有見過他。)

例 2：My mom **has not / hasn't cooked** (yet). (我媽媽還沒有煮飯。)

★ 註：have / has 在這裡是助動詞，所以它們的用法跟 **do / does** 一樣，可以和 **not** 縮寫成 **haven't / hasn't**。

例 3：Jack **hasn't been to** Japan. (Jack 沒有去過日本。)

例 4：They **have not gone to** Japan (yet). (他們還沒有去日本。)

★ 註：例句 3 中的 **been to** 與例句 4 中的 **gone to** 含意不一樣喔！

(1) **have / has been to** 指的是曾經去過某地的經驗，而且人早就回來，現在不在那裡。

(2) **haven't / hasn't been to** 表示沒有去某地的經驗。

(3) **have / has gone to** 指的是已經到達某地、現在在那邊，或是已經在去某地的途中。

(4) **haven't / hasn't gone to** 表示尚未出發去某地。

例 5：We **have never eaten** steaks. (我們從沒吃過牛排。)

例 6 : My father **has never been to** America. (我爸爸從沒去過美國。)

★ 註：否定句的表達，也可以在 **have** 及 **has** 後面加上 **never** 喔。我們用這個句構來表達**未曾、沒有過某經驗**，而且 **never** 已經有否定的意味，因此有了 **never** 就不需再寫 **not**。還有，以 **never** 來表示的句構不會加上 **yet** 唷！

 隨堂小練習

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我還沒看那部電影。

2. 我們沒去過日本。(用 **never** 造句)

3. 他們還沒去美國。

3. Have / Has 為首的疑問句及答句

只要將 **have / has** 搬移到句首就是現在完成式的疑問句，以下我們來看看疑問句和答句怎麼呈現。

(1) 疑問句及詳答

例 1 : **Have** you **fixed** your bike (yet) ? (你修理你的腳踏車了嗎?)
Yes, I have fixed my bike. (是的，我已經修理我的腳踏車。)

例 2 : **Has** Paul (ever) **got** good grades? (Paul 曾經得到好成績嗎?)
No, he has never got good grades. (不，他沒有得過好成績。)

★ 註 1：如果要詢問某動作是否完成，句尾可以加入 **yet**，當然也可不加，例如例 1；若要詢問是否有做過某事或某動作的經驗，句中可以加入 **ever**，當然也可不加，例如例 2。

★ 註 2：現在完成式疑問句的回答也是要用 **Yes** 或 **No** 開頭喔。

(2) 疑問句及簡答

例 1 : **Have** you ever **been** to that famous restaurant?

(你們去過那家有名的餐廳嗎?)

Yes, we have. (是的, 我們去過。)

例 2 : **Has** Tom **mopped** the floor yet? (Tom 已經拖地了嗎?)

No, he has not. (不, 他還沒拖地。)

= **No, he hasn't.**

例 3 : **Have** you ever **failed** in the exams? (你考試不及格過嗎?)

No, I never have. (不, 我沒有不及格過。)

★ 註 1 : 簡答時要用 have 或 has 結尾, 問句用 have, 答句就用 have, 問句用 has, 答句就用 has。

★ 註 2 : 前面提過, never 要放在 have / has 後面。但在簡答句裡面, never 要放在 have / has 的前面。例如: 例 3 的答句「I never have」。

4. How long 為首的疑問句及答句

我們也可用 how long 開頭, 再搭配現在完成式來詢問歷經了多久時間。

例 1 : **How long have** you **learned** English? (你學英文多久了?)

I have learned English for fifteen years. (我已經學英文 15 年了。)

例 2 : **How long has** she **played** the flute? (她吹長笛多久了?)

She has played the flute since 1:30. (自 1:30 起她就一直吹長笛。)

★ 註 : 用 how long 開頭的現在完成式疑問句, 回答時不需用 Yes 或 No 開頭喔。



隨堂小練習

❖ 翻譯題

1. 你爺爺以前曾經去過日本嗎?

2. 她們住在美國多久了?

3. Jack 剛剛才吃完午餐嗎? 不, 他還沒吃午餐。

文法得來速

❖現在完成式

1. 表示到目前為止「完成的動作」或「未完成的動作」



搭配副詞	句型	例句
already	肯定	Andy has already seen this movie.
just	肯定	Ken has just finished his breakfast.
yet	疑問	Have you fixed your bike yet ?

►比較

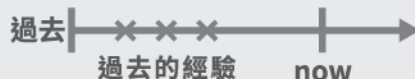
現在完成式：事情發生在過去某個非特定的時間點，而且剛結束。

過去簡單式：事情發生在過去某個**特定**時間點且**已經結束**。

	例句
1	Andy has (already) done his homework. ➔ 已寫完作業，何時完成不重要。 Andy did his homework last night. ➔ 昨晚完成作業。
2	Ken has just finished his breakfast. ➔ 已吃完早餐，何時吃完不重要。 Ken finished his breakfast two hours ago. ➔ 兩個小時前吃完早餐。



2. 表示到目前為止「有過的經驗」



搭配副詞	句型	例句
ever	疑問	Have you <u>ever</u> been to that famous restaurant?
yet	否定	They have not gone to Japan <u>yet</u> .
never	否定	We have <u>never</u> eaten steaks.
twice	肯定	I have read this book <u>twice</u> . (見備註 2)

備註：
 (1) 句子中有 **never**，句尾不會加上 **yet** 唷！
 (2) 表示次數的副詞有 **once, twice, three times, several times...**

► 比較

項目	例句
have / has been to	Jack has been to Japan. → 有去過日本，人已不在那邊
have / has gone to	They have gone to Japan. → 去日本途中或還在那邊

備註：
 (1) have / has **been to** 指的是曾經去過某地的經驗，現在人不在該地。
 (2) have / has **gone to** 指的是已經在去某地的途中，或人還在那邊還沒回來。

3. 表示持續的時間

項目	例句
for + 一段時間 	A : How long have you learned English? B : I have learned English <u>for fifteen years</u> .
since + { 過去時間點 過去式句子 	A : How long has she played the flute? B : She has played the flute <u>since 1:30</u> . It has been <u>three hours</u> since he finished his homework.

Topic 2 所有格代名詞與反身代名詞

這個單元會帶大家看所有格代名詞和反身代名詞。那麼，所有格代名詞是什麼呢？它是代替「所有格 + 名詞」的字，以避免重複一樣的名詞。如「**This is my pen, not his.**」，「**his**」就是「所有格代名詞」，等同於「**his pen**」。而反身代名詞，顧名思義就是指「主詞自己本人」，如「**Tom loves himself.**」，這裡的「**himself**」就是反身代名詞，指的是「**Tom**」自己。接下來，我們一起來看看這二種代名詞的用途吧！

一、所有格代名詞

我們用所有格代名詞來取代「所有格 + 名詞」，而所有格代名詞有哪些，它們又有什麼用途呢？現在就帶大家一起來看一看！

1. 主格 & 所有格 & 所有格代名詞

	單數			複數		
	主格	所有格	所有格代名詞	主格	所有格	所有格代名詞
第一人稱	I	my	mine	we	our	ours
第二人稱	you	your	yours	you	your	yours
第三人稱	he	his	his	they	their	theirs
	she	her	hers			
	it	its	its			
	Mark	Mark's	Mark's	Mark and Ben	Mark and Ben's	Mark and Ben's
	my brother	my brother's	my brother's	my brothers	my brothers'	my brothers'

 隨堂小練習

❖ 填充題（寫出下列主格的所有格代名詞）

所有格代名詞

所有格代名詞

1. I _____

6. we _____

2. you _____

7. they _____

3. he _____

8. May _____

4. she _____

9. May and John _____

5. it _____

2. 所有格代名詞的用途

所有格代名詞主要用來避免重複前面已出現過的名詞，以讓句子更精簡，我們來看看它們在句子中如何呈現吧！

例 1：Your straw is long, but my straw is short.

（你的吸管是長的，但我的吸管是短的。）

= Your straw is long, but mine is short.

例 2：My steak tastes great, but your steak tastes bad.

（我的牛排嚐起來很棒，但你的牛排嚐起來不美味。）

= My steak tastes great, but yours tastes bad.


例 3：This is my dictionary, not Kevin's dictionary.

（這是我的字典，不是 Kevin 的字典。）

= This is my dictionary, not Kevin's.

★ 註 1：所有格代名詞 = 所有格 + 名詞，用來避免名詞的重複。例如：例 1 中的 Your straw 已提過 straw 這個字，所以後面的 my straw 就不再提一次，因此用所有格代名詞 mine 來取代 my straw。

★ 註 2：同理，例 2 中的所有格代名詞 yours 取代 your steak，例 3 中的所有格代名詞 Kevin's 取代 Kevin's dictionary。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. This is your car, not _____ .
(A) our (B) we (C) ours (D) us
- () 2. May found her seat, and Joe found _____ , too.
(A) his (B) he (C) him (D) he's

❖ 翻譯題

1. 我的頭髮是短的，但他的是長的。

2. 妳的鋼琴是新的，但妳妹妹的是舊的。

 文法補充站

〈 雙重所有格 〉

相信大家都記得所有格不可與 a、an、the、this、those、some……等連用，所以當某句子的表達是需要所有格跟這些語詞搭配時，就會使用雙重所有格。而雙重所有格的組成要素之一就是**所有格代名詞**，現在一起來看看所有格代名詞的另一個用途！

- 例 1 : May is my a good student. (×)
May is a good student of mine. (○) (May 是我的一個好學生。)
- 例 2 : Jim is her a new friend. (×)
Jim is a new friend of hers. (○) (Jim 是她的一位新朋友。)
- 例 3 : This is a my grandparents' pet dog. (×)
This is a pet dog of my grandparents'. (○)
(這是我祖父母的一隻寵物狗。)

- ★ 註：雙重所有格的句構就是「名詞 + of + 所有格代名詞」，例如：上面例句中的「a good student of mine」、「a new friend of hers」以及「a pet dog of my grandparents」。

 隨堂小練習

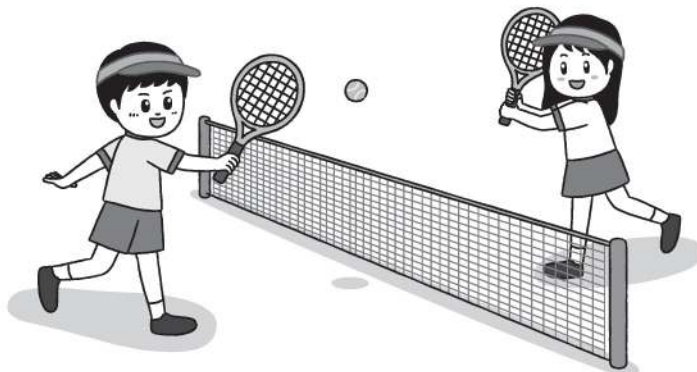
❖ 選擇題

- () 1. That is an idea _____ .
 (A) of you (B) of yours (C) yours (D) your
- () 2. May is a friend _____ .
 (A) of my brother (B) my brother's
 (C) of my brother's (D) my brother

❖ 翻譯題 (用雙重所有格造句)

1. 他是 Jane 的一個同學。

2. Mark 是我的一個鄰居。



二、反身代名詞

我們用反身代名詞來指「主詞自己本人」，而反身代名詞有哪些，它們又有什麼用途呢？我們一起來看看吧！

1. 主格 & 反身代名詞

	單數		複數	
	主格	反身代名詞	主格	反身代名詞
第一人稱	I	myself	we	ourselves
第二人稱	you	yourself	you	yourselves
第三人稱	he	himself	they	themselves
	she	herself		
	it	itself		

隨堂小練習

❖ 填充題（寫出下列主格的反身代名詞）

反身代名詞

反身代名詞

1. I _____

5. it _____

2. you (你) _____

6. we _____

3. he _____

7. you (你們) _____

4. she _____

8. they _____

2. 反身代名詞的用途

反身代名詞指「主詞自己本人」，中文意思是「……自己」，現在來看看它們在句子中如何呈現吧！

例 1 : I cooked dinner **(by) myself** yesterday. (我昨天自己煮晚餐。)

例 2 : She goes to school **(by) herself** every day. (她每天自己去上學。)

例 3 : They prepare breakfast **(by) themselves** every day.
(她們每天自己準備早餐。)

★ 註 : 反身代名詞可以用來修飾動詞, 「by + 反身代名詞」表示「靠自己或單獨做某事」, by 可省略掉。例如: 上面例句中的「(by) myself」、
「(by) herself」以及「(by) themselves」。

例 4 : This dog is looking at itself in the mirror. (這隻狗正看著鏡中的自己。)

例 5 : The little boy is talking to himself. (這個小男孩正在跟自己說話。)

例 6 : These old men take care of themselves. (這些老人家自己照顧自己。)

★ 註 1 : 主詞與受詞指的是相同的人或物時, 受詞會使用反身代名詞。例如:
例 4 中的主詞是 This dog, 而 look at 的受詞也是 this dog, 也就是這隻狗在看著牠自己。這種情況下, 受詞就不用 this dog 來表達, 而是改成用反身代名詞 itself 來表達。

★ 註 2 : 同理, 例 5 的受詞用 himself 來表達, 例 6 的受詞用 themselves 來表達。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. Mark made this cake _____ .
(A) himself (B) heself (C) hisself (D) him
- () 2. The girl hurt _____ yesterday.
(A) she (B) herself (C) sheself (D) hers

❖ 翻譯題

1. Jane 每天自己準備午餐。

2. 這個學生正在跟自己說話。



綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. Aunt Sabrina _____ a nurse in the hospital since 2015.
(A) was (B) have been (C) has been (D) been
- () 2. I _____ that movie many times, but I still have fun seeing it.
(A) have seen (B) have saw (C) saw (D) has seen
- () 3. Oh, no! We're late! The bus _____ already _____ .
(A) have ; left (B) has ; left (C) was ; left (D) would ; left
- () 4. This is Joy's bicycle, not _____ .
(A) my (B) me (C) myself (D) mine
- () 5. My sister has many hats. This yellow hat is also one of _____ .
(A) hers (B) her (C) herself (D) hers hat
- () 6. Lillian's parents are busy with their work, so she often has dinner by _____ .
(A) her (B) hers (C) herself (D) she
- () 7. A : Where's Ella? Is she in her room?
B : No. She's not home. She has already _____ to the gym.
(A) go (B) been (C) going (D) gone
- () 8. It _____ months since Yvonne _____ to Tainan. We all miss her.
(A) has been ; moved (B) was ; moved
(C) have been ; has moved (D) was being ; moved
- () 9. Lewis _____ the math test twice. He must study harder to pass it.
(A) fails (B) has failed (C) have failed (D) failing
- () 10. A : How long _____ your brother _____ in that city?
B : About four years.
(A) does ; live (B) have ; lived (C) did ; lived (D) has ; lived

- () 11. Mr. Lee has three sons. The boy over there is _____ .
 (A) his the oldest son (B) oldest his of sons
 (C) the oldest son of his (D) son of his oldest
- () 12. Before asking others to love you, you should love _____ first (先) .
 (A) you (B) yourself (C) yours (D) ourselves
- () 13. Wendy usually has good ideas. Using wastepaper (廢紙) to make baskets is _____ .
 (A) an idea of hers (B) one idea of her
 (C) hers an idea (D) one hers ideas
- () 14. A : _____ you ever _____ to that famous park?
 B : Yes, we have.
 (A) Do ; go (B) Have ; been (C) Have ; gone (D) Did ; gone
- () 15. A : This chocolate cake tastes great! Did you make it _____ ?
 B : No. I bought it from a coffee shop.
 (A) by yours (B) by yourself
 (C) on yourself (D) in your
- () 16. A : Has Grandfather taken his medicine yet?
 B : _____
 (A) Yes, he does. (B) Yes, he did.
 (C) Yes, he is. (D) Yes, he has.
- () 17. A : Whose notebook is this? Is it _____ ?
 B : No. It's _____ .
 (A) Teddy's ; my (B) your sister ; mine
 (C) Jeremy's ; mine (D) your ; Peter's
- () 18. The rain _____ yet, so you had better bring an umbrella when you go out.
 (A) doesn't stop (B) didn't stop
 (C) isn't stop (D) hasn't stopped
- () 19. A : Has your cousin played this card game before?
 B : _____
 (A) No, he never has. (B) Yes, he always does.
 (C) No, he never does. (D) Yes, he sometimes is.

- () 20. A : How long have you learned to play the guitar?
B : _____
(A) I learned to play the guitar by myself.
(B) I've learned to play the guitar for more than one year.
(C) I want to learn to play the guitar.
(D) I spent a lot of money buying this guitar.

二、句子重組

1. Kelly / for many years. / has / at the restaurant / worked

2. is blue, / My / and Hank's / pencil box / is green.

3. does / by herself. / Doris / her homework / seldom

4. have / three times. / These students / that museum / been to

5. of / a nice book / that writer's. / This is

三、翻譯題

1. Jennifer's English grade is better than mine.

2. My little brother hasn't finished reading the heavy book.

3. His parents have already gone to the train station.

4. That old man is too weak to walk by himself.

5. This is the best camera of my father's.





綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. Mrs. Wu taught her son to eat by _____ when he was one year old.
(A) him (B) his (C) himself (D) herself
- () 2. Calvin isn't here now. He _____ to the park with his friends.
(A) has gone (B) has been (C) goes (D) will go
- () 3. Andy's learned English _____ ten years. He speaks English really well.
(A) × (B) for (C) during (D) since
- () 4. Lily has a car, and I do, too. My car is older than _____.
(A) your (B) them (C) herself (D) hers
- () 5. A : _____ you ever _____ to Canada (加拿大)?
B : Yes, once.
(A) Do ; go (B) Have ; gone
(C) Have ; been (D) Did ; go
- () 6. My grandparents _____ in the town since they _____ little. They still live there now.
(A) live ; were (B) have lived ; were
(C) has lived ; are (D) lived ; are
- () 7. This is Annie. She is _____. We've been friends for years.
(A) one good friend of my (B) my a good friend
(C) a good friend of mine (D) mine one good friend
- () 8. We cannot decide for our son. We should let him decide for _____.
(A) him (B) his (C) himself (D) he
- () 9. A : David, why are you watching TV now? Have you done your homework?
B : _____ I finished it at school.
(A) Yes, I was. (B) Yes, I do.
(C) Yes, I has. (D) Yes, I have.

- () 10. My daughter can't eat by _____, so I have to feed _____.
- (A) herself ; her (B) her ; her
(C) hers ; herself (D) herself ; hers
- () 11. A : How long has Sammy studied art in the U.S.A.?
B : She's studied art there _____.
- (A) since 2022 (B) two years ago
(C) in 2020 (D) last June
- () 12. A : A man is talking with your sister at your door. Who's he?
B : Oh, he is _____.
- (A) ours one neighbor (B) a neighbor of ours
(C) our a neighbor (D) one neighbor of us
- () 13. A : _____ Benson _____ his car yet?
B : Not yet (還沒) . He's still eating his breakfast.
- (A) Did ; washed (B) Has ; washed
(C) Was ; washing (D) Does ; wash
- () 14. Mrs. Liu is good at making cakes, so she will make her son's birthday cake _____.
- (A) for her (B) by her (C) for herself (D) by herself
- () 15. A : Do you want some ice cream?
B : No, thanks. I _____ my dinner. I'm too full (飽的) now.
- (A) have just eaten (B) am just eating
(C) has ever eaten (D) have just ate
- () 16. A : I've never eaten in the restaurant near the hospital.
B : Oh, a friend _____ mine _____. He told me to try the food there. < 改編自 111 會考題 >
- (A) of ; has (B) by ; has (C) of ; does (D) by ; do
- () 17. My uncle _____ in the city library _____ twenty years. He is going to leave the job next month. < 改編自 109 會考題 >
- (A) has worked ; since (B) worked ; for
(C) has worked ; for (D) works ; since

- () 18. The woman beside Ken's car is a stranger (陌生人) to him. He _____ never _____ her before. < 改編自 107 會考題 >
- (A) did ; saw (B) has ; seen
(C) didn't ; seen (D) does ; seen
- () 19. A : Is this _____ book? I found it under my chair.
B : No, it's _____. I'll meet him later, so you can give it to me. < 改編自 102 會考題 >
- (A) your ; Edward's (B) yours ; Edward
(C) your ; Edward (D) yourself ; Edward's
- () 20. We _____ to the movies recently (最近) . Are there any good ones this week? < 改編自 101 基測題 >
- (A) didn't been (B) have go
(C) haven't been (D) aren't gone

二、填空

1. Mom, I _____ (finish) my homework already. Can I watch TV now?
2. Jane _____ (take) her medicine yet. She's going to take it now.
3. Don't wait for people to teach you. You can learn and try it _____ (you) .
4. We _____ (be) waiters at this restaurant for half a year.
5. Liam and I both have pets. Liam's pet is a rabbit, and _____ (I) is a dog.
6. Vincent is so handsome that he loves to look at _____ (he) in the mirror (鏡子) .
7. I _____ (know) Catherine since we were in junior high school.
8. Samuel has many sisters, and Karina is the youngest sister of _____ (he) .

9. The boys' mother is busy, so they have to prepare dinner by

_____ (they) .

10. Their daughter can play the piano, and _____ (we) can, too.

三、翻譯題

1. It has been three hours since Nancy went to the night market.

2. Gina has many dresses, and this is the prettiest one of hers.

3. The old man has never been to any movie theaters.

4. 你們才剛到辦公室嗎？

5. 我的女兒已經自己洗完碗了。（請用反身代名詞作答）



~背面尚有試題，請翻頁繼續作答~

四、閱讀測驗

Rachel : The new movie of my favorite actor's has come out since last weekend, and I'm going to see it tonight. Do you want to join me?

Sharon : I would like to, but I can't. I failed a few subjects last semester (學期), so my parents make me study harder this semester.

Rachel : Poor you. Although it's important to work hard on your studies, you still need some leisure time (休閒時間).

Sharon : I know, so I spend an hour playing badminton or basketball with my classmates after school every day. That helps me relax (放鬆).

Rachel : Playing sports is a good way, but I'm not an athletic (擅運動的) person. I usually read books or see movies to relax myself.

Sharon : As long as (只要) it helps you relax, it is a good way.

Rachel : You're right. I'm going to the movie theater now. Good luck on your studies!

- () 1. What is Sharon going to do tonight?
- (A) She's going to see a movie.
 - (B) She's going to play badminton.
 - (C) She's going to study.
 - (D) She's going to read a book.
- () 2. How long does Sharon spend on sports every day?
- (A) Thirty minutes.
 - (B) One hour.
 - (C) Two hours.
 - (D) An afternoon.
- () 3. What is true about Rachel?
- (A) She plays badminton after school every day.
 - (B) She will study at home tonight.
 - (C) She didn't pass some subjects last semester.
 - (D) She usually reads a book or sees a movie to relax herself.



綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A : Has your father _____ to the U.S.A. for work?

B : No, _____. (請簡答) He will go there next Tuesday.

2. A : Hey! Is this your umbrella? I found it under that chair.

B : Oh, yes, it's _____. Thank you.

3. A : Have you ever _____ to the toy shop next to the bookstore?

B : Yes, I've _____ there with my kids twice.

4. A : Look! Those children are making sandwiches by _____ .

B : They look like professional chefs (專業的廚師) in a restaurant.

5. A : How long _____ your parents lived in the house?

B : They've lived in the house since they _____ (get) married (結婚) .

二、翻譯題

1. 我和我弟弟每天自己去上學。

2. 這台機車好酷喔！它是你的嗎？

3. 你已經餵過你的狗了嗎？

4. 我姊姊不曾去過公園附近的那家健身房。

5. 你們的 T 恤是白色的，而他們的是藍色的。

6. 那位醫生在這家醫院已經工作多久了？

7. 你的女兒總是自己刷牙嗎？

8. 自從我的表哥搬去那個城市已經一年了。

9. 那個高高的男孩是她的一個新朋友嗎？

10. 我爺爺不在家。他已經去公園了。

三、短文英翻中與選擇

1. 短文英翻中

Mel : You look awful (糟糕的) . What happened to you?

Ted : I haven't eaten anything since 8:00 last night.

Mel : What?!! It's been more than 15 hours! Why don't you eat something?

Ted : My mom was too busy to prepare breakfast this morning, and there wasn't any food in our kitchen.

Mel : Um... But you can go to a convenience store (便利商店) and get something to eat.

Ted : Well, I have no money with me...



綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

Ryan 今天沒有去上學。他自從得了流感 (catch the flu) 已經兩天沒去上學了。他的媽媽帶他去看了醫生。醫生要求 (make) 他多喝開水並在飯後吃藥。他吃了藥以後感覺好一點了，但仍需要在家好好休息。

二、克漏字選擇

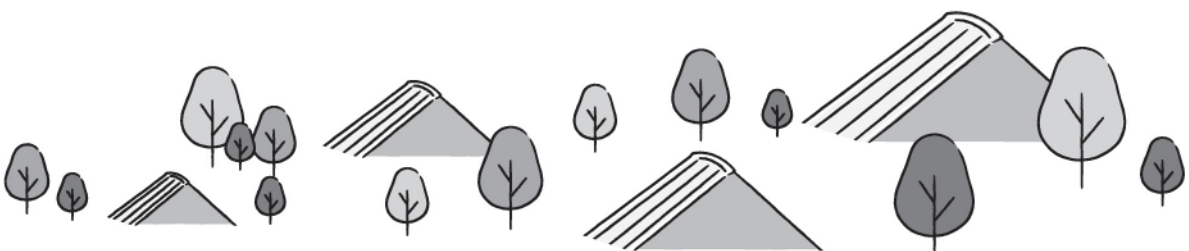
Have you ever 1 board games (桌遊)? You should give it a try because board games are not only fun to play but also good for our kids. When 2 board games, kids can 3 important social skills (社交能力) like sharing, making small talks and waiting. They can also learn 4 a peaceful attitude (平靜的態度) when losing the game. Another thing for them to learn is problem solving (問題處理能力). They have to 5 all the time during the game. With so many good sides of playing board games, we can let our kids 6 board games when spending time with them.

- () 1. (A) play (B) played (C) playing (D) plays
- () 2. (A) play (B) played (C) playing (D) to play
- () 3. (A) practicing (B) practiced (C) to practice (D) practice
- () 4. (A) to keep (B) keep (C) keeping (D) to keeping
- () 5. (A) thinking (B) thought (C) think (D) thinks
- () 6. (A) playing (B) to play (C) played (D) play

三、閱讀測驗

Wayne and his family moved to the countryside (鄉下) two years ago. In the beginning (一開始), Wayne didn't like living here because all of his good friends were in the big city. He missed them so much that he was unhappy every day. His grandfather noticed that, so he spent much time doing many things with Wayne. They caught fish and frogs in the lake; they planted fruits and vegetables themselves in front of their house. Wayne's grandfather also taught him to make toys with natural materials (自然的材料) like rocks and tree leaves (葉子). During the past two years, Wayne has had many special experiences (經歷) and also made some good friends here. Now Wayne has begun to enjoy the country life a lot.

- () 1. How long has Wayne's family lived in the countryside?
 (A) Two months. (B) Two weeks.
 (C) Two years. (D) Two days.
- () 2. Why was Wayne unhappy in the beginning?
 (A) Because his grandfather was too busy to play with him.
 (B) Because he missed his good friends in the big city.
 (C) Because he lost his favorite toy.
 (D) Because he had to plant vegetables by himself.
- () 3. What did Wayne not do with his grandfather in the countryside?
 (A) Play basketball in their yard.
 (B) Catch fish and frogs in the lake.
 (C) Plant fruits and vegetables.
 (D) Make toys with tree leaves.



II-8

附加問句及感嘆句

學習目標

- ① 學會附加問句的句構與用法
- ② 能使用感嘆句來表達感嘆或加強語氣



閱讀特快車

Please Help Me!

Owen was sleepy and lay down (躺在) on his bed when his mother called.

Owen : Hi, Mom. It's still early, isn't it?

Anita : Yes, and I am sorry to wake you up, honey. Listen, I need your help. Can you...

Owen : But Mom! I am still sleepy now.
Can't we talk later?

Anita : Sorry, Owen. My car is ^①out of order on the highway (高速公路) now.



Owen : What?! Are you okay now? Did you hurt yourself?

Anita : ^②Calm down, honey. I am fine and it's not so bad. But I can't ^③access the Internet to get the number for the roadside assistance (道路救援) .

(Joseph suddenly walked into the room.)

Joseph : Is it Mom on the phone? She isn't ^④in trouble, is she?

Owen : Oh, yes. She is. She is on the highway and her car doesn't work.

Joseph : Mom, we told you not to drive on the highway ^⑤on your own, didn't we?!

Anita : Both of you! Stop! I AM FINE! I need the service number (服務電話) only.

Owen : Ok! Ok! I am doing it now.

Anita : Text (傳簡訊) me back when you find the number.

Owen : I will. Stay safe, and I'll talk to you later. Bye!

Anita : I will. Thank you, honey!

- 文章說明
- ① out of order : 故障 (片語)
 - ② calm down : 冷靜點 (片語)
 - ③ access the Internet : 連上網路
 - ④ in trouble : 遇上麻煩 (片語)
 - ⑤ on one's own : 獨自一人 (片語)





文法報報

Topic 1 附加問句

這個單元會帶大家看附加問句。那麼，附加問句是什麼呢？它是用來尋求對方認同的簡短問句，如「那隻狗很可愛，**不是嗎？**」以及「他沒每天看電視，**是嗎？**」，前面二個句子中的「**不是嗎？**」和「**是嗎？**」，就是**附加問句**。附加問句前面會有一個完整的句子，如「**That dog is very cute.**（那隻狗很可愛）」、「**He doesn't watch TV every day.**（他沒每天看電視）」。而這一個完整的句子和附加問句要如何組合搭配呢？且看以下說明。

一、附加問句的組成原則 & 與前面完整句子的搭配

附加問句的 **Be** 動詞或助動詞要放在主詞的前面。此外，完整句子和附加問句中間要有逗號。完整句子是肯定的話，後面的附加問句要用否定，此時須將 **Be** 動詞 / 助動詞與 **not** 做縮寫；完整句子若是否定，則要搭配肯定的附加問句。

例 1：It is very hot today, **isn't it?**（今天很熱，不是嗎？）

肯定

否定

例 2：It is not hot today, **is it?**（今天不熱，是嗎？）

否定

肯定

例 3：He watches TV every day, **doesn't he?**（他每天看電視，不是嗎？）

肯定

否定

例 4：He doesn't watch TV every day, **does he?**（他沒每天看電視，是嗎？）

否定

肯定



隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

() 1. Amy is a famous singer, _____ she?

(A) isn't

(B) is

(C) be

(D) be not

() 2. Amy doesn't do her homework every day, _____ she?

(A) doesn't

(B) do

(C) does

(D) don't

二、Be 動詞的附加問句與答句

附加問句前面的完整句子如果是 Be 動詞的句型，附加問句中的動詞就會是 Be 動詞。現在一起來看看 Be 動詞附加問句的句構以及它的答句吧！

例 1：This guava is sweet, isn't it? (這顆芭樂很甜，不是嗎？)

Yes, it is. It is very sweet. (是，它是。它非常甜。)

例 2：Those people aren't friendly, are they? (那些人不友善，是嗎？)

No, they are not friendly. (不，他們不友善。)

★ 註 1：附加問句中的主詞要用和完整句子主詞相符的人稱代名詞。

★ 註 2：附加問句的回答跟一般問句一樣，如果答案是肯定的就回答 yes，否定的就回答 no。

例 3：I am very tall, am I not? (我非常高，不是嗎？)

= I am very tall, aren't I?

★ 註：I am 的完整句，其附加問句除了寫 am I not (正式但較少用)，也可寫 aren't I (較常用)。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. They are spoons, _____ ?
 (A) are they (B) aren't they (C) are not they (D) they are not
- () 2. They are not beans, _____ ?
 (A) are they (B) aren't they (C) they are (D) they are not
- () 3. I am handsome, _____ ?
 (A) not I am (B) am not I (C) I am not (D) am I not

❖ 翻譯題

1. 現在 10 點鐘，不是嗎？

2. 這些漫畫書不乏味，是嗎？

三、一般動詞的附加問句與答句

完整句子如果是一般動詞的句型，附加問句會用跟完整句子主詞及時態相呼應的**助動詞**（如 do / does / did）來組成。現在就來看看一般動詞附加問句的句構以及它的答句吧！

例 1：They don't walk to school every day, do they?

（他們沒每天走路去學校，是嗎？）

Yes, they walk to school every day.（是，他們每天走路上學。）

例 2：May doesn't know that actress, does she?（May 不認識那位女演員，是嗎？）

No, she doesn't know that actress.（不，她不認識那位女演員。）

例 3：You didn't hear that loud sound, did you?（你沒聽到那聲巨響，是嗎？）

Yes, I heard it.（是的，我有聽見。）

★ 註：附加問句中的助動詞要與完整句子的主詞及時態相呼應，如例 1 的完整句主詞是 They，時態為現在式，所以搭配附加問句助動詞要用 do。

例 4：Mark and Ben have to go to school, don't they?

（Mark 和 Ben 必須去學校，不是嗎？）

Yes, they have to go to school.（是的，他們必須去學校。）

例 5：Jane has to walk to school every day, doesn't she?

（Jane 必須每天走路去學校，不是嗎？）

Yes, she has to walk to school every day.（是的，她必須每天走路去學校。）

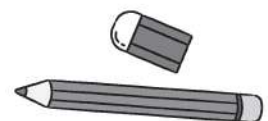
例 6：You had to wash your car this morning, didn't you?


（你今天早上必須洗車，不是嗎？）

No, I didn't have to wash my car this morning.

（不，今天早上我不必洗車。）

★ 註：完整句子中如出現一般動詞 have to / has to / had to，附加問句要以跟完整句子主詞及時態相符的助動詞（如 do / does / did）來組成。



 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. That boy didn't find his dog, _____ he?
 (A) does (B) doesn't (C) did (D) didn't
- () 2. Your sister has to do her homework, _____ she?
 (A) don't (B) doesn't (C) haven't (D) hasn't

❖ 翻譯題

1. 你每天聽音樂，不是嗎？。

2. 她們沒每天吃晚餐，是嗎？

3. 你們昨天必須去台北，不是嗎？

四、存在詞的附加問句與答句

完整句子如果是存在詞 **there be** 的句型，附加問句會用 **there** 結尾。以下我們來看看它的句構和答句怎麼呈現！

例 1： There is a pen on the desk, isn't there? (書桌上有一枝筆，不是嗎？)

Yes, there is a pen on the desk. (是，書桌上有一枝筆。)

例 2： There aren't students in the classroom, are there? (教室裡沒有學生，是嗎？)

No, there are not students in the classroom. (不，教室裡沒有學生。)

★ 註：完整句子裡的存在詞如果是單數句構，後面的附加問句就用單數；如果是複數句構，則附加問句要用複數。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. There isn't a banana on the table, is _____ ?
(A) there (B) where (C) it (D) they
- () 2. There are many kids in the yard, _____ ?
(A) are there (B) are there not
(C) isn't there (D) aren't there

❖ 翻譯題

1. 房子裡有一隻貓，不是嗎？

2. 動物園裡沒有動物，是嗎？

Topic 2 感嘆句

感嘆句，顧名思義就是表達如驚奇、讚賞、喜、怒、哀、樂等情緒。同時，它也有加強語氣的成分在。感嘆句最主要可用 **what** 或 **how** 開頭，也有 **such** 和 **so** 的感嘆句。而這些感嘆句的句構各為何呢？我們就一起來看看吧！

一、以 **what** 為首的感嘆句

我們用 **what** 為首的感嘆句來強調緊接在後的名詞，現在就來看看這類感嘆句吧！

例 1 : **What a great girl** (she is) ! (好棒的女孩啊！)



例 2 : **What an excellent engineer** (Jane is) ! (Jane 是多麼優秀的工程師啊！)




例 3 : **What nice toys** (they are) ! (多麼好的玩具啊！)



例 4 : What good water (it is) ! (多麼好的水啊!)

★ 註 1 : 以 **what** 為首的感嘆句，我們會在 **what** 後面接以形容詞修飾的可數或不可數名詞。如果接單數可數名詞，要記得在形容詞前面加 **a** 或 **an**，例如上面例句中的「**a great girl**」和「**an excellent engineer**」。

★ 註 2 : 在有上下文以及不影響文意的情況下，句尾的主詞與 **Be** 動詞可省略不寫，例如上面例句中的「**she is**」、「**Jane is**」、「**they are**」和「**it is**」可不寫。

 隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. What _____ movie!
 (A) an interesting (B) interesting
 (C) bad (D) an bad
- () 2. What _____ books!
 (A) a boring (B) an boring
 (C) an interesting (D) boring

❖ 翻譯題

1. 好棒的咖啡啊！(以 **what** 開頭作答)

2. 好聰明的學生啊！(以 **what** 開頭作答)



二、以 how 為首的感嘆句

感嘆句的形成也常會用到 **how** 這個字，我們用它來強調緊接在後的**形容詞**或**副詞**。我們一起來看看這類感嘆句吧！

例 1 : **How great** (the girl is) ! (好棒的女孩啊！)

例 2 : **How excellent** (the engineer is) ! (多麼優秀的工程師啊！)

例 3 : **How nice** (the toys are) ! (多麼好的玩具啊！)

例 4 : **How sweet** (the juice is) ! (好甜的果汁啊！)

★ 註：以 **how** 為首的感嘆句，我們會在 **how** 後面接形容詞，之後再接主詞與 **Be** 動詞。在有上下文以及不影響文意的情況下，常可看到感嘆句省略了主詞與 **Be** 動詞。

例 5 : **How fast** (the boy runs) ! (這個男孩跑得多快啊！)

例 6 : **How well** (the boy sings) ! (這個男孩唱得真好啊！)

★ 註：我們也會在 **how** 後面接副詞，之後再接主詞與動詞，例如上面的例 5 和例 6。然而，有上下文以及不影響文意的時候，主詞與動詞也可省略不寫喔。

隨堂小練習

❖ 翻譯題

1. 多麼有趣的書啊！(以 **how** 開頭作答)

2. 好甜的水啊！(以 **how** 開頭作答)

3. Ken 走得多慢啊！(以 **how** 開頭作答)

三、含有 such 的感嘆句

我們也會用 **such** 這個字來表達感嘆，用以強調緊接在後的**名詞**。現在就讓我們一起來看看 **such** 的感嘆句吧！

例 1：(He is) **Such a handsome man!** (真是個英俊的男人！)

例 2：(Jane is) **Such an excellent engineer!** (Jane 真是個優秀的工程師！)

例 3：(They are) **Such smart girls!** (真是聰明的女孩們啊！)

例 4：(It is) **Such delicious bread!** (真是美味的麵包啊！)

★ 註 1：含有 **such** 的感嘆句，我們會在 **such** 後面接以形容詞修飾的可數或不可數名詞。如果接單數可數名詞，要記得在形容詞前面加 **a** 或 **an**，例如上面例句中的「**a handsome man**」和「**an excellent engineer**」。

★ 註 2：在不影響文意的情況下，句首的主詞與 **Be** 動詞可省略不寫，如上面例句中的「**He is**」、「**Jane is**」、「**They are**」和「**It is**」可不寫。

隨堂小練習

❖ 選擇題

- () 1. It is _____ dictionary!
 (A) such heavy (B) heavy
 (C) such a heavy (D) such an heavy
- () 2. Ben is _____ old man!
 (A) lonely (B) such lonely
 (C) such an lonely (D) such a lonely

❖ 翻譯題

1. 真是有趣的故事！（以 **such** 作答）

2. 真是美味的米飯啊！（以 **such** 作答）

四、含有 so 的感嘆句

表達感嘆有時也會用 **so** 這個字，我們用它來強調緊接在後的**形容詞**。現在就一起來看看如何呈現 **so** 感嘆句吧！

例 1：That boy is **so shy**! (那個男孩真害羞！)



例 2：This movie is **so boring**! (這部電影真無聊！)



★ 註：so 的感嘆句，我們會在形容詞前面加 **so**，以強調這個形容詞，例如上面的

例 1 的「**so shy** (真害羞)」，**so** 強調了 **shy**。

例 3：Jane runs **so fast**! (Jane 跑得真快！)



例 4：This girl speaks English **so well**! (這個女孩英文講得真好啊！)



★ 註：我們也會在副詞前面加 **so**，以強調這個副詞，例如上面的例 3 的「**so fast** (真快)」，**so** 強調了 **fast**。



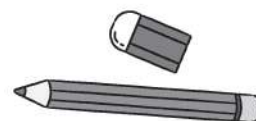
隨堂小練習

❖ 翻譯題

1. 這個故事真乏味！（以 **so** 作答）

2. 你的主意真棒！（以 **so** 作答）

3. Ben 走得真慢啊！（以 **so** 作答）





綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. My picture is beautiful, _____ ?
 (A) is it (B) isn't it
 (C) is my picture (D) doesn't it
- () 2. It's raining now, and the wind is strong. _____ bad weather it is!
 (A) How (B) Why (C) What (D) When
- () 3. Gary's mother works at the bank near your house, _____ ?
 (A) doesn't he (B) does she (C) doesn't she (D) isn't she
- () 4. The children aren't in the living room now, _____ ?
 (A) are they (B) aren't they (C) isn't he (D) are we
- () 5. Tiffany often helps her classmates and friends. _____ nice she is!
 (A) What (B) Such (C) Why (D) How
- () 6. Mr. Pierce knows much about science and math. He's _____ a smart person!
 (A) how (B) so (C) what (D) such
- () 7. You were not playing soccer at four this afternoon, _____ ?
 (A) weren't you (B) are you (C) were you (D) aren't you
- () 8. A : Wow! The dog is _____ cute! Can I keep it, Mom?
 B : No, you can't!
 (A) so (B) such (C) how (D) what
- () 9. The students have to practice speaking English at home, _____ ?
 (A) aren't they (B) do they (C) are they (D) don't they
- () 10. There is a comic book on Terry's desk, _____ ?
 (A) isn't it (B) isn't there (C) is it (D) is there

() 19. A : We have _____ this movie four times, but it is still fun to see.

B : That's true. The movie is _____ interesting!

(A) see : so (B) saw : such (C) seeing : such (D) seen : so

() 20. A : This is _____ story, isn't it?

B : You can say that again!

(A) such a boring (B) so boring a
(C) such boring a (D) so a boring

二、句子重組

1. his aunt / successful actress / What / a / is!

2. Irene / didn't / planted those flowers by herself / she? / yesterday,

3. beautifully / How / sings! / the little girl

4. aren't for us, / These / are / lemon pies / they?

5. much juice / There was / wasn't / in the bottle, / there?

三、翻譯題

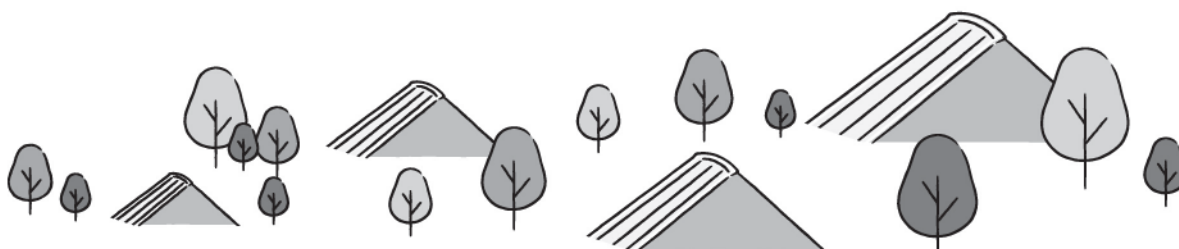
1. How excellent all of your students are!

2. Sally is a good friend of yours, isn't she?

3. That boy didn't finish his homework by himself, did he?

4. Chinese is such a beautiful language!

5. There were two oranges on the plate, weren't there?





綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. It's twelve o'clock now, _____ ?
 (A) is it (B) does it (C) isn't it (D) doesn't it
- () 2. My family had a big dinner together and talked happily. It was _____ !
 (A) such a wonderful night (B) so wonderful a night
 (C) so a wonderful night (D) such wonderful a night
- () 3. A : I am as tall as your brother, _____ ?
 B : I don't think so. My brother is a little taller than you.
 (A) am not I (B) are I not (C) am I not (D) isn't I
- () 4. There are some pictures on Mr. Chou's desk, _____ ?
 (A) are there (B) aren't there (C) are they (D) aren't they
- () 5. _____ terrible the weather _____ !
 (A) What ; is (B) How ; it is (C) What ; it is (D) How ; is
- () 6. A : Allen always drives _____ safely, doesn't he?
 B : Yes. He is _____ a safe driver.
 (A) such ; so (B) such ; such (C) so ; such (D) so ; so
- () 7. A : Your grandparents don't live in this city, _____ ?
 B : No, they _____. They live in a small town.
 (A) do you ; don't (B) do they ; don't
 (C) don't they ; do (D) don't you ; do
- () 8. A : _____ beautifully that girl dances! Who's she?
 B : She is Alice, a classmate of _____. She dances the best
 in my class.
 (A) What ; mine (B) How ; mine
 (C) How ; my (D) What ; my
- () 9. A : I just bought this pizza. Do you want to have a bite (咬一口) ?
 B : Oh, what _____ ! Thank you so much!
 (A) a kind person you are (B) kind a person are you
 (C) kind you are (D) you are a kind person

- () 10. A : That boy is one of Mel's brothers, _____ ?
B : No, he's a cousin of _____ .
(A) is he ; hers (B) isn't she ; her
(C) is she ; her (D) isn't he ; hers
- () 11. It is not easy for your son to use chopsticks to eat noodles,
_____ ?
(A) is he (B) isn't he (C) is it (D) isn't it
- () 12. A : You don't drink black tea, do you?
B : _____
(A) Yes, I don't. (B) No, we do.
(C) Yes, we do. (D) No, we didn't.
- () 13. A : There was a little sugar in that cup, _____ ?
B : I don't know. I didn't notice that.
(A) wasn't there (B) was not there
(C) was there not (D) wasn't it
- () 14. Mr. and Mrs. Chen had to take care of their baby all night,
_____ ?
(A) hadn't they (B) had they (C) did they (D) didn't they
- () 15. A : _____ beautifully the woman sings! Is she a singer?
B : You don't know her?! She is _____ singer in the U.S.A.
now!
(A) What ; the more popular (B) How ; the most popular
(C) How ; the popularest (D) What ; most popular
- () 16. A : Jim has asked me many times, but he still can't remember my
birthday!
B : Don't be angry. He always forgets things easily, _____ ?
< 改編 106 年會考題 >
(A) does he (B) doesn't he (C) isn't he (D) did he
- () 17. A : The new MRT line (捷運路線) saves us a lot of time when
going to work.
B : Absolutely (完全同意) ! _____ < 改編 107 年會考題 >
(A) It is such convenient! (B) What convenient!
(C) It is so convenient! (D) How convenient is it!

- () 18. A : Patrick always tells his wife everything, _____ ?
 B : Yes, _____. He never hides anything from her.
 < 改編 108 年會考題 >
 (A) isn't he ; he isn't (B) does he ; he does
 (C) doesn't he ; he does (D) is he ; he is
- () 19. A : Aunt Elaine is coming to visit us today, _____ ?
 B : Yes, _____. She will stay with us for three days.
 < 改編 110 年會考題 >
 (A) is she not ; she isn't (B) isn't she ; she will
 (C) is she ; she is (D) isn't she ; she is
- () 20. A : Wow! _____
 B : Well, I just like to put everything in the right place.
 < 改編 101 年基測考題 >
 (A) Your room looks so tidy! (B) What tidy your room is!
 (C) How a tidy room! (D) Your room is such tidy!

二、填空

- Your grandfather does not live with you, _____ he?
- This brown jacket is cheaper than that blue one, _____ it?
- The women took a yoga (瑜珈) class this morning, _____ they?
- _____ (what / how / so / such) handsome that young man is!
- I like math. It is _____ (what / how / so / such) an interesting subject.
- There were not many people at the market this afternoon, were _____ ?
- The test was _____ (what / how / so / such) difficult! Only few people in our class passed it.

8. We have to plant these fruit trees by ourselves, _____ we?
9. I am the prettiest girl in this class, _____ I?
10. Bill and Max never clean their desks. _____ (what / how / so / such) lazy boys they are!

三、翻譯題

1. You often go fishing by yourself, don't you?

2. How fast that black horse runs!

3. Those children were playing in the yard at that time, weren't they?

4. 多麼美味的麵包啊！（請用 What...is! 造句）

5. 他昨天沒有和你們一起吃晚餐，是嗎？





綜合練習 第三回

一、對話填空

1. A : Your grandmother doesn't eat beef, _____ ?

B : No, she _____ . (請簡答)

2. A : There is a red marker under my chair, _____ ?

B : Yes, _____ . (請簡答)

3. A : It is raining heavily outside, and the wind is _____ (so / such) strong.

B : _____ bad the weather is!

4. A : My neighbor, Mr. Wen, buys gifts _____ us whenever (每當) he takes a trip.

B : Wow! He is _____ (so / such) a nice person!

5. A : Nickson has to study English at home today, _____ he?

B : Yes, he _____ . (請詳答)

二、翻譯題

1. 你昨晚用了我的字典，不是嗎？

2. 她真是個優秀的女演員！（請用 such 作答）

3. 你的阿姨有兩個女兒和一個兒子，不是嗎？

4. 多麼有趣的故事啊！（請用 **What ... is!** 造句）

5. 他今天下午沒去健身房，對吧？

6. 上周六那家餐廳裡沒有很多人，是嗎？

7. 我是這個班上最瘦的女生，不是嗎？

8. 那些老人走得好慢啊！（請用 **How** 開頭作答）

9. 你們沒有任何信封，是嗎？

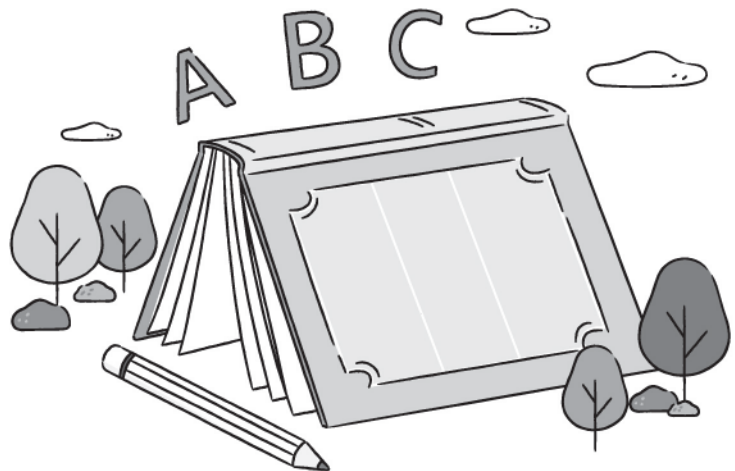
10. 那個女孩跳舞跳得真美！（請用 **so** 作答）



~背面尚有試題，請翻頁繼續作答~

2. 短文選擇

- () (1) Are there any buns or pies on the table now?
 (A) Yes, there are many buns and pies on the table.
 (B) Yes, there is still a bun on the table.
 (C) No, there are no buns or pies on the table.
 (D) We don't know.
- () (2) Who was eating a pie five minutes ago?
 (A) Eric. (B) Eric's mom.
 (C) Eric's dad. (D) Eric's sister.
- () (3) What is Eric going to eat ten minutes later (十分鐘後)?
 (A) He's going to eat some cookies.
 (B) He's going to eat salad.
 (C) He's going to eat bread.
 (D) He isn't going to eat anything.





綜合練習 第四回

一、短文中翻英

今天早上我太晚起床，以致於沒能趕上公車，所以我上學遲到了。上音樂課時，我忘了帶我的長笛。音樂老師對我很生氣。放學後，我和我的一個同學在公園打羽毛球，突然（suddenly）下起大雨。我們兩個都沒帶傘，因此淋濕了。今天真是好糟的一天！

二、克漏字選擇

Do you spend much time 1 your cellphone every day? How 2 do you spend on it? What do you usually use it for? Many people use their cellphones for social communication (社交溝通) and entertainment (娛樂). For example (舉例來說), people often talk to their family and friends on their cellphone. They can also send emails, watch videos, play games and do so much more on their cellphone. Another convenience (便利) of using a cellphone is online shopping (線上購物). People no longer (不再) need to go to stores to get their food and clothes. 3 great cellphones are!

Although cellphones help us with our lives greatly, spending too much time on them 4 not good for our eyes. Also, you 5 less time to spend with people in the real world when you spend most of your time

on your phone. Just as bad, you would not have much time to exercise when 6 your phone all the time. This is not good for your health. So, it is important to use your time well and spend less time on your phone.

- () 1. (A) in (B) with (C) on (D) for
- () 2. (A) many (B) long (C) old (D) far
- () 3. (A) How (B) What (C) Such (D) So
- () 4. (A) are (B) is (C) do (D) does
- () 5. (A) did have (B) has
 (C) doesn't have (D) would have
- () 6. (A) use (B) to using (C) uses (D) using



~背面尚有試題，請翻頁繼續作答~

三、閱讀測驗

Today I'm going to show you a way to work with chocolate, and you can use the way when making chocolate desserts (甜點). Before we start, you need to prepare two pots (鍋); one should be bigger than the other. Then, break your chocolate into small pieces (片;塊) and put them in the smaller pot. You can also put butter and sugar in the pot at this moment because you will need to mix (混合) **them** when making your chocolate desserts.

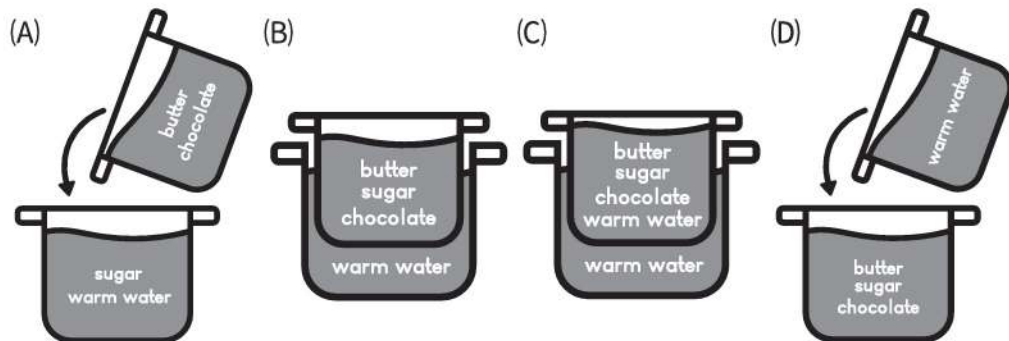
Now, fill half of the bigger pot with warm water. Put the smaller pot over the bigger one, and slowly mix the chocolate, the butter and the sugar together. You should keep the water under 50°C and must not let any water go into the smaller pot – or the chocolate will become hard! Just keep mixing all the materials (材料) in the smaller pot for about 5 to 10 minutes, then you will get the perfect (完美的) chocolate for your desserts. It's very easy, isn't it?

<改編109年會考題>

() 1. What does “**them**” mean in this reading?

- (A) Chocolate desserts.
- (B) Warm water and chocolate.
- (C) Chocolate pieces.
- (D) Chocolate pieces, butter and sugar.

() 2. From the reading, which picture best shows the way of working with chocolate?



() 3. From this reading, which is true?

- (A) The two pots should be the same size.
- (B) We should not mix butter and chocolate pieces at the same time.
- (C) It is better to put warm water in both of the two pots.
- (D) The water in the pot should not be more than 50°C.

II 級總複習



綜合練習 第一回

一、單選題

- () 1. It's already 11:50. You had better _____ off the TV and _____ to bed now.
(A) to turn ; go (B) turn ; go
(C) turning ; going (D) to turn ; to go
- () 2. That man is _____ doctor in the hospital near my house.
(A) the most good (B) better
(C) the goodest (D) the best
- () 3. Ricky is too weak _____ the heavy box by _____.
Let's help him.
(A) to carry ; his (B) carrying ; himself
(C) to carry ; himself (D) carries ; him
- () 4. A : How much did you _____ on your new jeans?
B : About two thousand dollars.
(A) cost (B) take (C) spend (D) pay
- () 5. A : Dad, I need a notebook. Can you buy _____ me?
B : Sure.
(A) one for (B) a to (C) ones for (D) some to
- () 6. This coat is pretty, but it doesn't _____ on you. Don't waste (浪費) your money on it.
(A) taste well (B) look good
(C) see well (D) sound great
- () 7. A : Have you ever _____ to Tokyo Disneyland (東京迪士尼樂園)?
B : Yes, once. And I will visit there again next month.
(A) go (B) gone (C) been (D) being

- () 8. It is impossible (不可能的) _____ me _____ this heavy book in one hour.
(A) for ; to read (B) of ; reading
(C) to ; to read (D) on ; reading
- () 9. A : Tiffany often buys toys and books for kids from poor families.
B : _____
(A) Such nice she is! (B) How a nice girl!
(C) So nice girl! (D) What a nice girl!
- () 10. Bella didn't hear her friend _____ her name because she was wearing earphones (耳機) .
(A) calls (B) to call
(C) calling (D) has called
- () 11. Mr. Wang always makes his son _____ jogging or hiking with him on weekends.
(A) to go (B) goes (C) going (D) go
- () 12. A : Greg has to finish his homework before dinner, _____?
B : Yes.
(A) has he (B) hasn't he (C) doesn't he (D) does he
- () 13. My sister feeds her dog a lot every day, so it is getting _____ and _____.
(A) fatter ; fatter (B) fat ; fat
(C) fater ; fater (D) fatter ; fattest
- () 14. A : I haven't seen that movie before. How about you?
B : _____
(A) I have, too. (B) I don't, either.
(C) I haven't, either. (D) I haven't, too.
- () 15. _____ dinner usually _____ my mom forty minutes every day.
(A) Cook ; takes (B) To cook ; costs
(C) Cooking ; takes (D) Cooks ; spends









(5-7題)

Collect your smiley faces at Joyful Bakery!

Great news! To thank everyone for buying our cakes and breads at our bakery, we are now going to give out free cakes – if (如果) you collect enough smiley faces at our bakery! Are you ready to bring some free food back home? Let's find out how to bring them back!

Rule number 1 : From Jan. 1 to Jan. 31, you will get one smiley face sticker (貼紙) if you spend 50 dollars ; if you spend \$100, you'll get 2 stickers. And so on (以此類推) .

Rule number 2 : You can trade for (兌換) a free cake or get a cake at a better price from the chart (表格) below (下方) .

Spend	Get	You can trade for...	
\$150		A bag of cookies.	
\$200		From Jan. 15 to Feb. 14, you can get a mint chocolate cupcake (薄荷巧克力杯子蛋糕) for free.	
\$250		One free cheese cake!	
\$300		One of the cakes below for free!	
			
Strawberry Cake \$250	Mint Chocolate Cupcake \$110	Cheese Cake \$200	Tiramisu (提拉米蘇) \$270

- () 5. Casey went to Joyful Bakery on January 15 and spent \$450. How many stickers will she get?
 (A) 6. (B) 7. (C) 8. (D) 9.
- () 6. Rachel had 4 stickers and she went to the Joyful Bakery on February 13. What can she get for free?
 (A) One tiramisu. (B) One cheese cake.
 (C) One mint chocolate cupcake. (D) Nothing.
- () 7. Maxine had 2 stickers and her brother had 4 stickers. They went to Joyful Bakery on February 16. Who could get a cake for free?
 (A) Maxine's brother.
 (B) Maxine and her brother.
 (C) Maxine.
 (D) None of them could get the free cake.

(8-10題)

Dear Kate,

Guess what? (你猜如何?) My dad took us to our uncle's farm in Nantou (南投) last Saturday. Our uncle, Tom, runs a very big farm on one of the mountains there. On that farm, there are hundreds of cows. He lets the cows walk freely on the farm three times a day; each time is 30 minutes. He also plays music for them and talks to them every day. Uncle Tom takes so good care that everyone buys a bottle of milk on the farm every time.

This time, Uncle Tom let Cathy and I try to milk (擠奶) the cows by ourselves! We even (甚至) had milk ice cream and cheese there. Those dairy products (乳製品) were both delicious! My family had a great time that day. You should come and visit with us next time. I will see you soon!

Warm wishes,

Nick

- () 8. Who is Uncle Tom?
(A) He is Cathy's father.
(B) He is Nick's old friend.
(C) He is one of Nick's dad's friends.
(D) He is Cathy's uncle.
- () 9. Where did Nick go with his family last Saturday?
(A) A supermarket near their house.
(B) A zoo in Nantou.
(C) His uncle's ice cream shop.
(D) A farm in Nantou.
- () 10. Which of the following (下列) **isn't** true?
(A) Uncle Tom has a farm in Nantou.
(B) Kate visited the farm with Nick and Cathy.
(C) Uncle Tom's cows listen to music every day.
(D) Nick and Cathy milked the cows by themselves.

(11-13題)

Abby loves to eat fast food (速食) like pizza, hot dogs and hamburgers, but her parents seldom lets her 11 those. They always say, "They are not healthy food. Stay away from (遠離……) them and eat more healthily."

Yesterday Abby's parents were not home and told her to have dinner on her own. Abby bought two big pizzas, a hamburger and a bottle of Coke. She enjoyed all of them by 12. However (然而), she ate so much that her stomach ached (痛) last night. When her parents came back home, they took her to the hospital. The doctor asked Abby 13 there for one night. It was a truly unpleasant (令人不愉快的) night for Abby, so she would never do it again next time!

- () 11. (A) to eat (B) eating (C) eats (D) eat
- () 12. (A) her (B) herself (C) she (D) hers
- () 13. (A) stayed (B) stay (C) to stay (D) staying





綜合練習 第二回

一、單選題

- () 1. A group of students kept talking so _____ that I _____ have a rest on the bus.
(A) quiet : can't (B) loudest : shouldn't
(C) loudly : couldn't (D) quietly : wouldn't
- () 2. A : Your father always drives to work, _____ he?
B : No, he _____. He sometimes goes to work by bus.
(A) does : doesn't (B) doesn't : doesn't
(C) isn't : isn't (D) doesn't : does
- () 3. _____ my pet dog usually _____ me forty minutes every day.
(A) Walking : spends (B) To walk : costs
(C) Walking : takes (D) To walk : spend
- () 4. This purple hat costs NT\$100 and that gray hat does, too.
= This purple hat is _____ that gray hat.
(A) cheaper than (B) as cheap as
(C) as cheaper as (D) cheap than
- () 5. A : I found a ruler under my desk. Is it _____ ?
B : No, it's not _____. It's Dora's.
(A) your : my (B) yourself : mine
(C) yours : mine (D) yours : me
- () 6. Joseph is growing _____, so his old pants are too short for him. He needs to buy some new _____.
(A) tall : one (B) taller : ones
(C) tallest : ones (D) taller : one
- () 7. My family will have dinner at that restaurant after my dad _____ off work.
(A) will get (B) got (C) gets (D) getting

- () 8. _____ of my classmates likes to make others _____ things for him, so we don't like him.
 (A) One ; do (B) Ones ; do
 (C) One ; to do (D) Ones ; doing
- () 9. A : Has Polly ever bought coffee _____ you?
 B : No, she never _____ .
 (A) for ; has (B) to ; does (C) for ; does (D) to ; has
- () 10. A : I just saw a man _____ with you, and he looked _____ Bob. Who's he?
 B : Oh, he is Bob's brother.
 (A) talk ; × (B) to talk ; like
 (C) talking ; × (D) talking ; like
- () 11. Mr. Chou gives those poor children food and books. _____ he is!
 (A) Such nice (B) How nice man
 (C) So kind man (D) What a kind man
- () 12. A : Oh, no! I forgot _____ my pencil box. Can you lend (借) me a pen?
 B : Sure. You can use any pen of _____ .
 (A) bringing ; mine (B) to bring ; mine
 (C) bringing ; my (D) to bring ; myself
- () 13. I put on one of _____ favorite coats before _____ to the party last night.
 (A) mine ; go (B) my ; to go
 (C) my ; going (D) mine ; going
- () 14. A : I _____ your son cry loudly just now. What happened?
 B : His dad didn't let him _____ his favorite cartoon (卡通) .
 (A) heard ; watch (B) listened ; watch
 (C) heard ; to watch (D) listened ; watching

- () 15. A : My doctor asked me _____ more vegetables and less meat (肉) .
B : You _____ follow (遵循) his words.
(A) to eat ; have better (B) eat ; had better
(C) to eat ; should (D) eating ; may

二、題組

(1-3 題)

Molly and Sandy went to a mall (購物中心) to select (挑選) a birthday gift for Allen because Allen's birthday was around the corner (即將來臨).

Molly : I seldom see Allen wear shirts. He has only a few shirts, and most of them are so old that he does not want to wear them to work. We should buy him a new one.

Sandy : That's a great idea! Look at that gray one on the wall! It'll look nice on Allen.

Molly : Yeah, but...Allen doesn't like gray, does he?

Sandy : Oh, yes. You're right. He does not like gray... Wait. How about the blue one over there?

Molly : It looks fine to me. Let me check the price first... Oh, no. It's almost four thousand dollars. That's too expensive. Let's get out of here. We can find something less expensive (較不昂貴的) at the clothing store (服飾店) near the train station.

- () 1. Why were Molly and Sandy selecting a shirt for Allen?
(A) Because Allen's birthday was coming.
(B) Because Allen asked them to do so.
(C) Because they didn't like Allen's old shirts.
(D) Because Allen wanted a new shirt.

- () 2. How much might the blue shirt be?
 (A) NT\$1500. (B) NT\$2200.
 (C) NT\$4200 (D) NT\$3900.
- () 3. Where would Molly and Sandy go after leaving the mall?
 (A) The train station. (B) A clothing store.
 (C) A department store. (D) A restaurant.

(4-6 題)

Jeremy Lin
 No. 116, Happy Rd.,
 North Dist., Tainan City



To Joann,
 Our baby girl, Donna, is turning one year old this month. We would like to invite you to come and celebrate (慶祝) her first birthday on May 25. The party will start at 6:00 p.m. We are looking forward to (期待) seeing you soon!

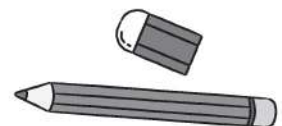
Best wishes,
 Irene and Jeremy

Ms. Joann Lin

 No.218, Pingan St.,

 South Dist., Taichung

- () 4. What is true about Donna?
 (A) She is Joann's daughter.
 (B) She sent the postcard (明信片) to Joann.
 (C) She is already one year old.
 (D) She is Jeremy and Irene's daughter.



- () 5. Why did Jeremy send this postcard to Joann?
- (A) To celebrate her birthday.
 - (B) To invite her to his daughter's birthday party.
 - (C) To share his everyday life.
 - (D) To tell her some bad news.
- () 6. What can we know from this postcard?
- (A) Donna lives in Taichung now.
 - (B) There will be a party at Jeremy's home on May 25.
 - (C) Joann is going to have a party at her house.
 - (D) Irene doesn't have any children.

(7-9 題)

Emily's parents enjoy traveling (旅遊) very much, so Emily and her sister have been to many countries (國家) since they were little. Among (在……之中) all those countries, Emily likes the U.K. the most because she's a big fan of *Harry Potter* movies. She even wants to find a job and live there when she grows older.

Louis, one of Emily's cousins, has studied art in London for two years. Emily is going to visit him next Sunday, but she has never flown to a foreign country by herself. So she is excited (感到興奮的) but a little nervous (緊張的) at the same time about this trip.

- () 7. Which country is Emily's favorite?
- (A) The U.S.A.
 - (B) Japan.
 - (C) The U.K.
 - (D) Canada.
- () 8. How long has Louis lived in the U.K.?
- (A) One year.
 - (B) Two years.
 - (C) Three months.
 - (D) Five weeks.

- () 9. Why is Emily nervous about her trip to the U.K.?
 (A) She has never been there.
 (B) She doesn't know anyone in the country.
 (C) She is going to find a job there.
 (D) She is going to fly to the country on her own.

(10-12 題)

Ms. Wu : Peter, I saw you reading this page (頁) twenty minutes ago. Why are you still on this page?

Peter : Well... The sentences on this page are so long that I have to spend more time 10 them, and some of the words are too difficult for me to understand.

Ms. Wu : Those are just your excuses (藉口)! I 11 you the words at least (至少) three times, and all of your classmates have already finished reading the story. Now, let's see... What's that in your pocket (口袋)? Take it out of your pocket and give 12 now!

Peter : (Taking out his cellphone) Sorry, teacher. I won't use it in class again, so please don't tell my parents about this...

Ms. Wu : (Take away Peter's cellphone) It's too late, Peter. You should have thought about the result (後果) before using your cellphone in class.

- () 10. (A) to read (B) reading (C) read (D) for reading
- () 11. (A) have taught (B) will teach
 (C) am teaching (D) was teaching
- () 12. (A) me it (B) it me (C) it to me (D) me for it

Vocabulary

800單字列表 (No. 301-600)

本列表依字母順序排序 (A→Z)



- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. agree | 動 同意 | 22. both | 形代連 兩者的; 兩者 |
| 2. air | 名 空氣 | 23. bright | 形 明亮的 |
| 3. airplane | 名 飛機 | 24. bring | 動 攜帶; 帶來 |
| 4. along | 介 沿著 | 25. bun | 名 小圓麵包 |
| 5. although | 連 雖然 | 26. butter | 名 奶油 |
| 6. American | 名 美國人 | 27. camera | 名 照相機 |
| 7. another | 形 另一個的 | 28. candle | 名 蠟燭 |
| 8. arm | 名 手臂 | 29. cap | 名 帽子 |
| 9. around | 介副 在...附近 | 30. care | 動 關心; 喜歡 |
| 10. arrive | 動 到達 | 31. careful | 形 小心的 |
| 11. as | 介 作為
連 依照 | 32. carefully | 副 小心地 |
| 12. away | 副 離...多遠 | 33. castle | 名 城堡 |
| 13. basket | 名 籃子 | 34. chance | 名 機會 |
| 14. beach | 名 海灘 | 35. change | 動 改變
名 零錢 |
| 15. bean | 名 豆子 | 36. cheat | 動 作弊 |
| 16. become | 動 變成; 成為 | 37. check | 動名 檢查; 核對 |
| 17. bench | 名 長板凳 | 38. cheese | 名 乳酪 |
| 18. birthday | 名 生日 | 39. choose | 動 選擇 |
| 19. blanket | 名 毯子 | 40. church | 名 教堂 |
| 20. block | 名 街區 | 41. circle | 名 圓圈 |
| 21. blow | 動 吹 | 42. city | 名 城市 |



- | | | | | | |
|----------------------|----|----------|-----------------------|----|---------|
| 43. clear | 形 | 明朗的; 清楚的 | 64. drop | 動 | 掉落; 滴下 |
| 44. clerk | 名 | 店員 | 65. each | 形 | 每一; 每個 |
| 45. collect | 動 | 收集 | 66. earth | 名 | 地球(常大寫) |
| 46. comfortable | 形 | 舒適的 | 67. Easter | 名 | 復活節 |
| 47. convenient | 形 | 便利的 | 68. either | 副 | 也(不) |
| 48. copy | 動 | 抄寫; 複製 | 69. elementary school | 名 | 小學 |
| 49. corner | 名 | 轉角; 角落 | 70. envelope | 名 | 信封 |
| 50. correct | 形 | 正確的 | 71. excellent | 形 | 優秀的 |
| | 動 | 改正 | 72. fact | 名 | 事實 |
| 51. could | 助 | can 的過去式 | 73. fail | 動 | 不及格; 失敗 |
| 52. country | 名形 | 鄉村(的) | 74. famous | 形 | 有名的 |
| 53. crazy | 形 | 著迷的 | 75. far | 形 | 副遠的(地) |
| 54. cry | 動 | 哭; 大叫 | 76. feel | 名動 | 感覺 |
| 55. cut | 動名 | 切; 傷口 | 77. fill | 動 | 裝滿 |
| 56. decide | 動 | 決定 | 78. find | 動 | 找到; 找尋 |
| 57. delicious | 形 | 美味的 | 79. fire | 名 | 火 |
| 58. department store | 名 | 百貨公司 | 80. fix | 動 | 修理; 確定 |
| 59. dictionary | 名 | 字典 | 81. flower shop | 名 | 花店 |
| 60. difficult | 形 | 困難的 | 82. forget | 動 | 忘記 |
| 61. dot | 名 | 點 | 83. fork | 名 | 叉子 |
| 62. Dr. | 名 | 博士; 醫生 | 84. French fries | 名 | 薯條 |
| 63. dragon | 名 | 龍 | | | |

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|----|-------|-------------|----|-------|
| 85. fresh | 形 | 新鮮的 | 106. him | 代 | 他(受格) |
| 86. friendly | 形 | 友善的 | 107. hope | 名動 | 希望 |
| 87. garbage | 名 | 垃圾 | 108. hunt | 動 | 打獵 |
| 88. giant | 名 | 巨人 | 109. ice | 名 | 冰 |
| | 形 | 巨大的 | 110. if | 連 | 如果;是否 |
| 89. glad | 形 | 高興的 | 111. inch | 名 | 英吋 |
| 90. grade | 名 | 成績;等級 | 112. inside | 介 | 在……裡面 |
| 91. gray | 名形 | 灰色(的) | | 副 | 在裡面 |
| 92. ground | 名 | 地面 | 113. invite | 動 | 邀請 |
| 93. group | 名 | 團體 | 114. itself | 代 | 它自己 |
| 94. guava | 名 | 芭樂 | 115. jeans | 名 | 牛仔褲 |
| 95. guy | 名 | 傢伙 | 116. job | 名 | 工作 |
| 96. habit | 名 | 習慣 | 117. king | 名 | 國王 |
| 97. ham | 名 | 火腿 | 118. knee | 名 | 膝蓋 |
| 98. hang | 動 | 掛;懸吊 | 119. knife | 名 | 刀子 |
| 99. hear | 動 | 聽 | 120. knock | 動 | 敲;打 |
| 100. heart | 名 | 心臟 | 121. lake | 名 | 湖泊 |
| 101. heavy | 形 | 重的 | 122. lamp | 名 | 檯燈 |
| 102. hers | 代 | 她的 | 123. land | 名動 | 陸地;登陸 |
| 103. herself | 代 | 她自己 | 124. large | 形 | 大的 |
| 104. hide | 名動 | 躲藏 | 125. lazy | 形 | 懶散的 |
| 105. himself | 代 | 他自己 | 126. leave | 動 | 離開;遺忘 |

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 127. left | 名形副 左方(的);
向左方 | 147. mistake | 名 錯誤 |
| 128. lemon | 名 檸檬 | 148. moment | 名 時刻 |
| 129. let | 動 讓 | 149. mop | 名 拖把
動 拖(地) |
| 130. letter | 名 信; 字母 | 150. more | 副形 更(多的) |
| 131. lettuce | 名 萵苣 | 151. most | 副 最
形 多數的 |
| 132. life | 名 生活; 生命 | 152. motorcycle | 名 機車 |
| 133. light | 名 燈光; 光線
形 輕的 | 153. mountain | 名 山 |
| 134. lonely | 形 孤獨的 | 154. move | 動 搬; 感動 |
| 135. lose | 動 弄丟; 失去 | 155. movie theater | 名 電影院 |
| 136. loud | 形 大聲的; 吵鬧的 | 156. much | 形代 很多的 |
| 137. lovely | 形 美好的 | 157. mud | 名 泥巴 |
| 138. machine | 名 機器 | 158. must | 助 必須 |
| 139. mad | 形 生氣的; 瘋狂的 | 159. myself | 代 我自己 |
| 140. mark | 名動 (做) 記號 | 160. nail | 名 指甲 |
| 141. mat | 名 踏墊; 墊子 | 161. nature | 名 大自然(常大寫) |
| 142. maybe | 副 也許 | 162. neighbor | 名 鄰居 |
| 143. menu | 名 菜單 | 163. news | 名 消息; 新聞 |
| 144. me | 代 我(受格) | 164. nobody | 名 無人 |
| 145. mile | 名 英里 | 165. nothing | 代 無物; 無事 |
| 146. mine | 代 我的 | 166. notice | 動 注意 |
| | | 167. office | 名 辦公室 |

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 168. often | 副 常常 | 189. preparation | 名 準備 |
| 169. order | 名動 點餐 | 190. prepare | 動 準備 |
| 170. other | 形代 其他(的) | 191. price | 名 價錢 |
| 171. ours | 代 我們的 | 192. prince | 名 王子 |
| 172. ourselves | 代 我們自己 | 193. princess | 名 公主 |
| 173. over | 形介 結束; 超過 | 194. prize | 名 獎品 |
| 174. own | 形 自己的 | 195. program | 名 節目 |
| 175. pack | 名 包
動 裝(箱) | 196. proud | 形 驕傲的 |
| 176. package | 名動 包裹(裝) | 197. purple | 名形 紫色(的) |
| 177. papaya | 名 木瓜 | 198. queen | 名 王后; 女王 |
| 178. part | 名 部分 | 199. quick | 形 快的 |
| 179. pass | 動 經過; 通過 | 200. quiz | 名 小考(測驗) |
| 180. paste | 動 黏貼 | 201. R.O.C. | 名 中華民國 |
| 181. pay | 動 付(錢) | 202. radio | 名 廣播; 收音機 |
| 182. perhaps | 副 或許 | 203. railway | 名 鐵路 |
| 183. plant | 名動 植物; 種植 | 204. rainbow | 名 彩虹 |
| 184. please | 動 請; 取悅 | 205. recorder | 名 記錄器; 錄音機 |
| 185. point | 名動 要點; 指點 | 206. repeat | 動 重複 |
| 186. police station | 名 警察局 | 207. rest | 名 休息 |
| 187. pond | 名 池塘 | 208. restaurant | 名 餐廳 |
| 188. post office | 名 郵局 | 209. right | 名形副 右方(的);
向右方 |

210. rise	動 上升; 升起	231. sit	動 坐
211. river	名 河流	232. size	名形 尺寸
212. rock	名 石頭	233. sky	名 天空
213. roll	動 滾動; 晃動	234. slide	名 滑坡 動 滑動
214. rule	名 規則 動 統治; 裁決	235. smell	名 氣味 動 聞
215. safe	形 安全的	236. smile	名動 微笑
216. salad	名 沙拉	237. smoke	名 菸 動 抽菸
217. save	動 拯救; 節省	238. snack	名 點心; 小吃
218. sea	名 海	239. soldier	名 士兵
219. seat	名 座位	240. soon	副 很快地
220. seed	名 種子	241. sound	名 聲音 動 聽
221. send	動 寄	242. spaghetti	名 義大利麵
222. sentence	名 句子	243. spend	動 花(錢; 時間)
223. shape	名 形狀; 樣子	244. spoon	名 湯匙
224. sharp	形 劇烈的; 鋒利的	245. square	名 廣場 形 正方形(的)
225. shop	名 商店	246. stamp	名 郵票
226. should	助 應該	247. station	名 車站
227. shoulder	名 肩膀	248. steak	名 牛排
228. shy	形 害羞的	249. still	副 仍然
229. side	名 (旁) 邊	250. stop	動 停止
230. sir	名 先生(尊稱)	251. strange	形 奇怪的

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----|--------|-----------------|----|---------|
| 252. straw | 名 | 吸管 | 273. try | 動 | 試做 |
| 253. street | 名 | 街道 | 274. tub | 名 | 缸; 盆; 桶 |
| 254. successful | 形 | 成功的 | 275. turn | 名動 | 轉彎 |
| 255. sweater | 名 | 毛衣 | 276. understand | 動 | 了解 |
| 256. sweet | 形 | 甜(美)的 | 277. unhappy | 形 | 不快樂 |
| 257. swing | 動 | 搖擺 | 278. until | 介連 | 直到 |
| | 名 | 鞦韆 | 279. up | 副介 | 向上 |
| 258. tape | 名 | 錄音帶 | 280. us | 代 | 我們(受格) |
| 259. taste | 動名 | 味道; 嚐 | 281. video | 名 | 錄影帶 |
| 260. tell | 動 | 告訴; 吩咐 | 282. visit | 動 | 拜訪; 參觀 |
| 261. than | 連 | 比 | 283. waiter | 名 | 服務生 |
| 262. theater | 名 | 劇院 | 284. watermelon | 名 | 西瓜 |
| 263. theirs | 代 | 他們的 | 285. wave | 名 | 波浪; 海浪 |
| 264. them | 代 | 他們(受格) | 286. way | 名 | 道路; 路途 |
| 265. themselves | 代 | 他們自己 | 287. welcome | 動 | 歡迎 |
| 266. ticket | 名 | 票; 罰單 | 288. whose | 代 | 誰的 |
| 267. toast | 名 | (烤過)土司 | 289. will | 助 | 將(助動詞) |
| 268. tool | 名 | 工具 | 290. wind | 名 | 風 |
| 269. total | 名 | 統計 | 291. wish | 名動 | 希望 |
| | 形 | 全部的 | 292. without | 介 | 沒有 |
| 270. town | 名 | 城鎮 | 293. word | 名 | 字 |
| 271. treat | 動 | 對待; 處理 | | | |
| | 名 | 款待; 請客 | | | |
| 272. true | 名形 | 真實(的) | | | |

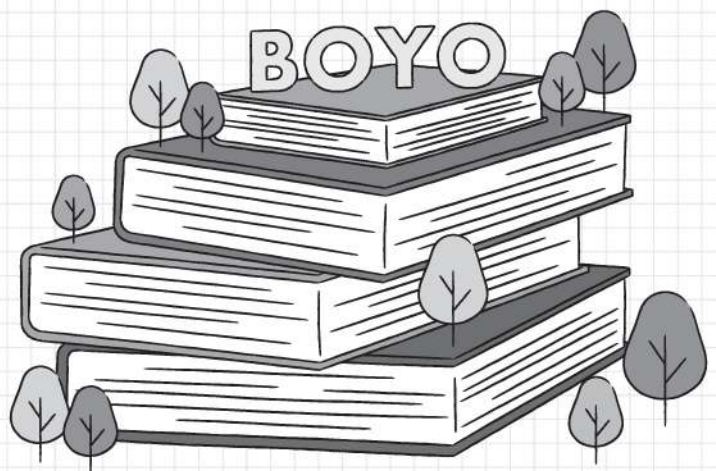


800 單字列表 (No.301-600)

294. world 名 世界
295. yard 名 碼; 庭院
296. yet 副 尚未
 連 然而
297. yours 代 你(們)的
298. yourself 代 你自己
299. yourselves 代 你們自己
300. yummy 形 好吃的



NOTES



NOTES

